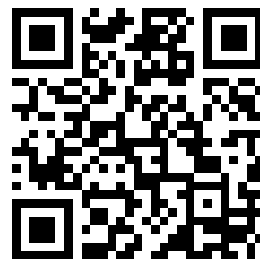

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

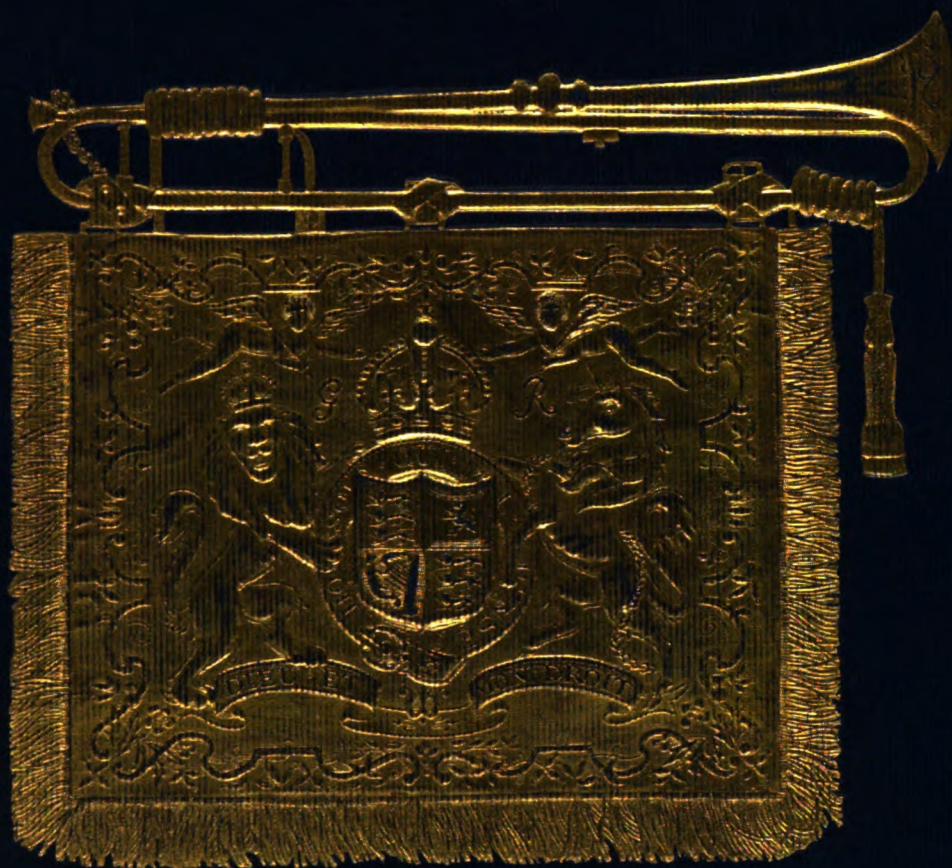
GoogleTM books

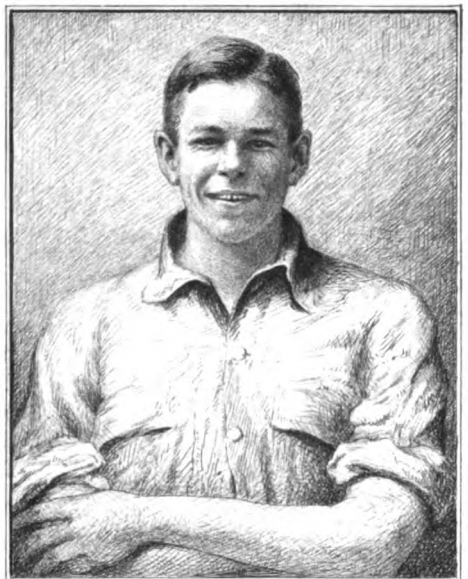
<https://books.google.com>



B 336749

DUPL





In Memory of
STEPHEN SPAULDING
1907 - 1925
CLASS of 1927
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

W. H. B. 1927

UA
656
H84
A7

**THE STORY OF THE
HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY**

VOLUME III



*His Majesty the King.
Colonel in Chief of the Household Cavalry.
From a photograph by Messrs. Lafayette.*

THE STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

BY CAPTAIN SIR GEORGE ARTHUR
BART. LATE SECOND LIFE GUARDS

REVISED BY

CAPTAIN SHENNAN, ROYAL HORSE
GUARDS

VOLUME III

LONDON
WILLIAM HEINEMANN LTD.

1926

PRINTED IN ENGLAND



THE STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

George Arthur
BY CAPTAIN SIR GEORGE ARTHUR
BART. LATE SECOND LIFE GUARDS

ASSISTED BY

CAPTAIN SHENNAN, ROYAL HORSE
GUARDS

VOLUME III



LONDON
WILLIAM HEINEMANN LTD.

1926

PRINTED IN ENGLAND

0.1305

90

DEDICATED
BY GRACIOUS PERMISSION
TO
HIS MAJESTY
KING GEORGE THE FIFTH
COLONEL-IN-CHIEF
OF THE
HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

AUTHOR'S NOTE

THE STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY has no claim to literary merit or military value ; it is simply an attempt to exhibit the circumstances of the Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards—on the lines of the preceding volumes—from the accession of King Edward VII. to the close of the War. The duties of the Household Cavalry were so diverse, and they themselves were so distributed, that it has been found impossible to record their doings in the latter stages of the great struggle with the same particularity as will be found in most regimental histories. Their Roll of Honour is their abiding witness as to what they stood forward to accomplish. The chief interest of the volume may well lie in the Sovereign's gracious acceptance of its dedication ; the honour which His Majesty has thus conferred will surely earn the gratitude of the soldiers whose duties lie around his Person, and who own him as Colonel-in-Chief as well as King. The portrait which forms the frontispiece is taken from a special photograph of His Majesty in the uniform of the Royal Horse Guards ; that of Lord Haig is due to Sir William Guthrie's famous picture. As to the other illustrations—which, of course, have no reference to the text—I am deeply indebted to Mr. Huttleston Broughton sometime 1st Life Guards, who served with distinction in the Great War, for the original drawings of Life Guards and for the Battle of Waterloo,

and to Mr. Henry Broughton, Royal Horse Guards, for those representing the Blues.

Both Captain Shennan and I would express our thanks to Corporal of Horse Hills, Life Guards, for much patient and valuable help.

G. A.

PREFACE

SIR GEORGE ARTHUR has invited me to write a few words of Preface to this volume of the "Story of the Household Cavalry," in which he has brought their record to the close of the Great War.

It was my privilege to be closely associated with the Household Cavalry from the earliest days of the campaign. With me they fought round Mons. I had the honour of being with them in the retreat in August, 1914 ; in the wonderful recovery and advance from the Marne, northwards to the Aisne ; circling round the German right, to the glorious battle-grounds of Messines, Wyt-schaette and Ypres. Never have soldiers of the King been more sorely tried ; never have been more finely displayed the virtues of endurance and valour—unsurpassable, well-nigh superhuman—which changed defeat into victory.

The story is vividly set before us. The historian tells us, too, how and when the Household Brigade took the field, and the achievements of the Brigade equalled those of the Regiment which eventually they absorbed.

Until the day, in June, 1917, when I was ordered to the Eastern theatre, I was in frequent and close touch with the Brigade ; and it was my happy fortune to witness and to admire their splendid exploits on many a varying scene and in many bitter fights.

Not only as Cavaliers did the Household Troops gain distinction ; equally brilliant was their behaviour when fighting on foot. In either form of action they proved themselves to be masters of their work. Under every

condition, they evinced that quick agility of brain and body which is the sure mark of a Cavalry trained to opportunism and adept in making fullest and equal use of physical and mental qualities.

In the later stages of the War, converted to an Infantry status, transformed to a Machine Gun organisation—fresh laurels were gathered. Whatever duty might be set, it was gladly accepted, and was executed without protest or murmur. Almost the last words of one of their officers—who, later, died a hero's death—were "It is all in the day's work." These words express the sentiment which inspired everyone.

None, reading this volume, will fail to be moved by the stirring example, herein shown, of devotion and of self-sacrifice even to the extent of self-effacement.

These Regiments (the bodyguard of the King), rightly jealous of dignities conferred by the Sovereign, yielding to none their valued privileges, when the call came willingly made the most difficult of all acts—the act of self-abnegation; and they rose to the highest plane of merit, confidently upborne in the knowledge that from those who are greatly trusted great things are due.

ALLENBY, F.M.,
Colonel 1st Life Guards.

DEAL CASTLE,
25th August, 1926.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
<p>I. King Edward VII. and the <i>Entente</i>—The President of the French Republic—The new duties of the Household Cavalry—Gold and Silver Sticks—Escorts and guards—Troopers—Manœuvres—General Foch</p>	I
<p>II. Death and Lying in State of King Edward—Protest of Household Cavalry as to their traditional privilege to perform duty within Royal Palaces—Arguments submitted to Lord Halsbury—Coronation of King George V. and Queen Mary—Durbar—Review in Windsor Park</p>	13
<p>III. Ultimatum to Germany—Household Cavalry Regiment under Colonel Cook forms part of British Expeditionary Force—Queen Mary and Queen Alexandra take leave of the Regiment—Arrival of the Composite Regiment at the Front—Billets—General Allenby—The retreat from Mons—Sir John French and Lord Kitchener—The Battle of the Marne—General Maunoury—Joffre's advance to the Aisne—Paissy—The move to the north—The Household Cavalry Regiment in the first Battle of Ypres—Lord John Cavendish and Lord Crichton killed</p>	28
<p>IV. The Household Cavalry Brigade under General Kavanagh forms part of the Third Cavalry Division, commanded by General the Hon. Julian Byng—Household Cavalry Reserve Regiments—Reservists from Cavalry of the Line—Officers composing the Seventh (Household Cavalry) Brigade—The Brigade embarks for Zeebrugge and Ostend—Fall of Antwerp—The Third Cavalry Division and Seventh Division form Fourth Corps under Sir Henry Rawlinson—The Second Life Guards at Menin—The Brigade in the first Battle of Ypres</p>	78
<p>V. The Royal Horse Guards at Kruisecke—Fabeck's attack on Zandvoorde—Two squadrons of Life Guards under Lord Hugh Grosvenor and Captain Vandeleur and Machine Guns under Lord Worsley annihilated—Two squadrons of Life Guards come to assistance of General Gough—The Dunkirk Conference—Household Cavalry forbid the path to Ypres—Zwartelee—Death of Major the Hon. Hugh Dawnay—Composite Regiment absorbed in Household Cavalry Brigade—The Blues posted to Eighth Cavalry Brigade, and replaced by Essex Yeomanry—Hazebrouck</p>	97
<p>VI. Winter training—Relief of French troops in trenches—Neuve Chapelle—Poison gas—The second Battle of Ypres—Famous Counter-attack of Eighth Cavalry Brigade</p>	119

CHAPTER	PAGE
VII. Cavalry training and digging—The Guards Division—The Battle of Loos—Reserves denied to Sir Douglas Haig—The Blues at the Battle of Loos—Constant stream of recruits for Household Cavalry—Divisional Squadron and Cyclists Corps—An unhappy jibe—Lord Grenfell—The King's tribute to the Life Guards	136
VIII. Sir Douglas Haig assumes command of the British Army on the Western Front—His arrangements and friendly relations with Joffre—Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards join in Seventh Machine Gun Squadron—The Abbeville Manœuvres—The Battle of the Somme—Tanks—The Band—Haig protests against reduction of Cavalry—Pioneer Battalions—The German strategic retirement	150
IX. The Battle of Arras—The Seventh Cavalry Brigade, now under General Bertram Portal, in reserve—Monchy—The Blues in the battle—Death of the General commanding Eighth Cavalry Brigade	163
X. The Household Battalion—Captain Wyndham Portal appointed to command—Battalion arrives in France, November, 1917, and takes over ground occupied by the French—The Battalion in the Arras offensive—The attack on the Scarpe River—Rœux Cemetery—Reconnaissance work—Exploit of Corporal-of-Horse Hammill—The Passchendaele Ridge—Requette Farm—Captain Cazalet—The disbandment—Farewell message of the King	171
XI. The explosion at Messines—The Household Cavalry in the Peronne area—Mounted sports at Haute Venante—The Household Cavalry in reserve and in action in the Passchendaele operations—Pill-boxes—The Battle of Cambrai	185
XII. Montigny Farm—The Household Cavalry to be converted into machine gunners—The Secretary of State for War informs the colonels of regiments—Letters from the Commander-in-Chief and Field-Marshal Sir Evelyn Wood to Kavanagh—The Household Cavalry hurried from Abbeville to the fighting line on foot—Training at Etaples—The Household Cavalry's contribution in man-power to the War—Household Siege Battery under Major Astor—The air raid at Etaples—The machine gunners proceed to the Front—Reserve Regiments	192
XIII. Marshal Foch, now in supreme command, prepares his great plan of attack—The Life Guards at the Arras front—Informal inspection of First Life Guards and Blues by the King—The Second Life Guards constantly engaged—Death of young Ferguson—The barrages of the Household Cavalry—Attempt at home to reduce their pay and alter their badges frustrated by the Commander-in-Chief	206
XIV. First Life Guards and Blues form Lindsay's (afterwards Brassey's) Brigade—At Bray—The Second Life Guards across the Hindenburg Line—First Life Guards and Blues at Guillemont—The Second Life Guards and Blues change places—The Blues' barrage at Bois de L'Abbaye—The Armistice—The Sovereign's message to the Army	212
Roll of Honour	221
Requiem at the Abbey—Guards March—Victory March	250

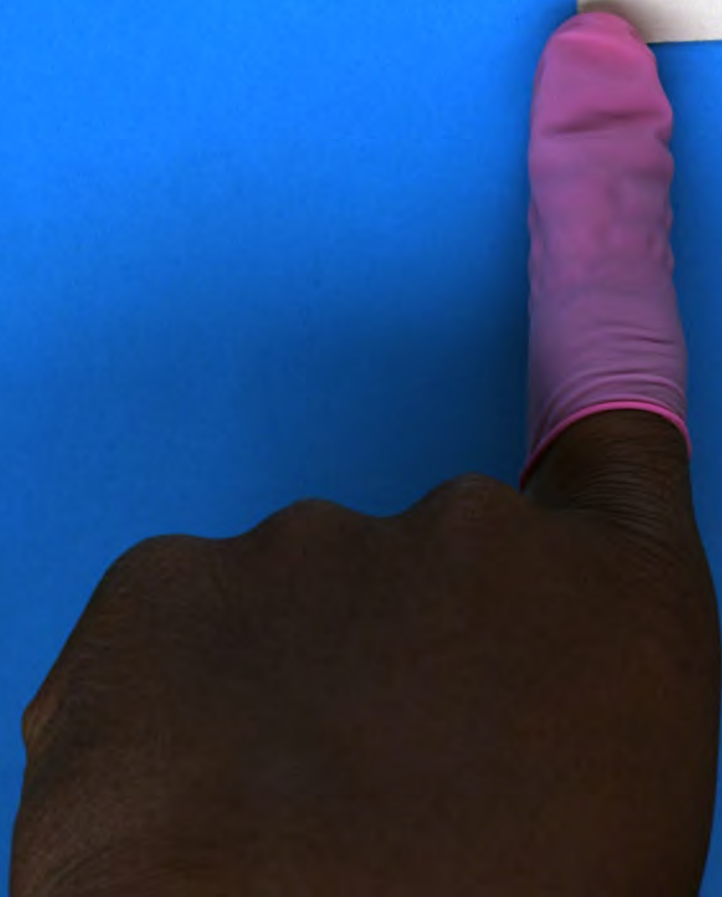
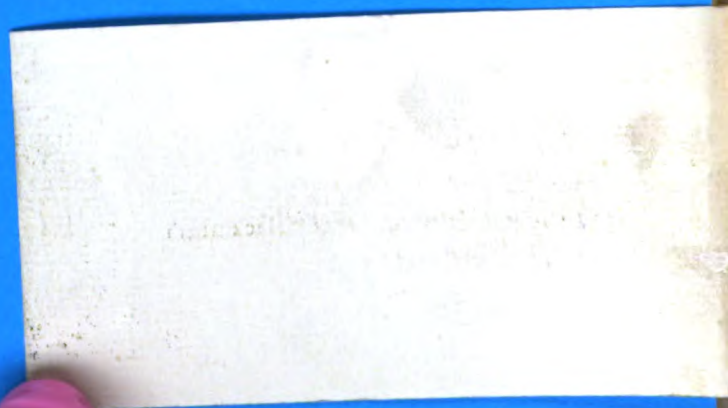
CORRIGENDA.

Page 30, for "Boulby" read "Bowlby."

Page 49, for "Der" read "Die."

Page 103, for "McIntosh" read "Mackintosh."

Page 106, for "et" read "en."



THE STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

CHAPTER I

THE story of the Household Cavalry broke off at the point where, on August 11th, 1902, Edward VII., attended and escorted by Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards, entered the Abbey Church at Westminster, and was acclaimed, anointed and crowned King. Before, however, that brilliant ceremony—postponed for two months owing to the Sovereign's illness—had taken place, King Edward had begun to stamp himself and his reign on history; he had set himself simply and steadfastly to win and retain the friendship—and something more—of France.* It may well be that King Edward's knowledge of foreign politics, largely based on his knowledge of foreign personages, caused him to be one of the clear thinkers who recognised that the so-called "peaceful penetration" of Germany might have for its end something very like a

* When the Peace Procession, in the van of which rode the Household Cavalry, had filed by, Marshal Foch turned to a friend and said: "Three great figures are missing: King Edward, the creator of the *Entente*, Lord Roberts, who warned his country of what was to come, and Lord Kitchener, the organiser of victory."

R.C.

B

2 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

German hegemony* of Europe. Whether to prepare for a trial of strength, or whether to pursue as far, and as long, as possible a path of peace, a close *entente* with our nearest neighbour suggested itself to King Edward as a matter not only of mutual interest, but of sound common sense. The Boer War—rightly or wrongly—had alienated French sympathy from us ; to recover, renew and retain that sympathy seems to have been, from the day of his accession, uppermost in his thoughts. His convalescence was hardly established when, of his own initiative, a State visit to Paris was arranged ; this took place on May Day, 1903, when the tact and courtesy, and, above all, the graceful speech delivered in French at the Hotel de Ville, broke down the icy barrier set up at first by the Parisians, who, before the King's departure, surrendered at discretion to his charms. The visit was, of course, a matter for reciprocity ; President Loubet gladly accepted a cordial invitation to come to London, and for the first time a Sovereign's escort of Household Cavalry clattered to the doors of St. James's Palace surrounding the carriage in which sat the head of a Republic.

With the coming of Edward VII. to the throne there came an increase of duties for the Household Troops. The Court for forty years had been pervaded by a very cool colour ; the Sovereign had discontinued any residence—other than for a day or two—in London, and had eschewed all social functions ; within the walls of Windsor Castle no sound of revelry had been heard ; at Osborne and Balmoral domesticity had been the dominant note, and the visit to Ireland, within a year of the Royal demise, stood out as almost a solitary occasion ; the

* It should be remembered that Queen Victoria's affection for Germany did not blind her to the devouring ambition of the German Emperor. In 1895 she desired Lord Wolseley to warn the Governor of Gibraltar that her grandson on his forthcoming visit should be shown nothing, and told nothing, which was not open to the ordinary traveller.

Great Queen of imperishable memory had reigned in something like mystery as well as majesty, and in the latter decades of her blameless life had remained—so far as mundane happenings were concerned—austerely aloof.

Now Buckingham Palace, renovated and reorganised, was to be the throbbing centre of the capital; the Sovereign would once more open Parliament in person, would convene Chapters of the Garter and lead processions of the Knights to St. George's Chapel; the monarchs of Europe would in succession be entertained in the Royal Palaces and lend their presence to Guildhall banquets; drawing-rooms by daylight, the terror alike of dowagers and *débutantes*, were to be abolished, and evening receptions, blazing with light and luxurious with hospitality, were to be substituted; at Edinburgh and Dublin the King and his Consort would hold their Courts; the Waterloo Gallery was to be the scene of a ball unrivalled perhaps in beauty; investitures would again be clothed in full circumstances; public buildings would be opened in state, and public institutions inspected with ceremony.

For all such occasions the Household Cavalry must be summoned; a committee of which the Silver Stick was a member, was to draw up for the King's approval, a table of arrangements for the visits of august personages; the peculiar duties of the Gold and Silver Sticks were freshly set out; a Sovereign's escort would no longer be a rarity, and once more the King's Life Guard at Whitehall would be strictly true to its title.

For more years than the Orderly Rooms could remember, it had been the custom for the full Guard * to mount

* For a short time also when Queen Victoria spent a couple of nights in London, the Full Guard would be augmented by a second subaltern; this was due to the claim put forward that the Life Guard was entitled to an extra place at the Mess in St. James's Palace. The claim was

4 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

on November 9th—this without any special reference to the Lord Mayor—and to be replaced by a short Guard on a date in August, which roughly coincided with the rising of Parliament. This anomalous arrangement was now to be dropped, and the Full Guard, consisting of one Captain, one Subaltern, one Corporal-Major, two Corporals of Horse, one Corporal, one Farrier, one Trumpeter, and twenty-seven Troopers, was to mount at Whitehall whenever, and for as long as, the King should be in residence at the Palace.* This order, which was alike logical and historically correct, held good until the outbreak of the Great War, and the dispatch of a composite Regiment overseas, when King George promptly ordered that only a Short Guard should do duty—a concession the more valuable because during the four years' struggle the Sovereign was seldom absent from the metropolis.

The State duties of His Majesty's Household Cavalry required revision and the Standing Orders were ordered to be drawn up anew.

THE GOLD STICK-IN-WAITING

The Gold Stick-in-Waiting † for the month will be detailed by Roster from the three Regiments of Household Cavalry.

admitted, but there came a rather acid order that the place must actually be filled by an officer from Whitehall.

* For a year or two the Full Guard was relieved as soon as the Sovereign left the capital, but the King then decreed that the same Guard must be posted for the person of the Queen Consort as for his own. The Short Guard was made up of one Corporal-of-Horse, one Corporal, and thirteen Troopers.

† Prince Edward of Saxe-Weimar was succeeded in the Command of the First Life Guards by Lord du Ros, on whose death, in 1907, Lord Grenfell was appointed to the post. In the Second Life Guards Earl Howe and Lord Chelmsford preceded the Earl of Dundonald—who served from Subaltern to Colonel of the Regiment. Lord Wolseley was followed in the Colonelcy of the Royal Horse Guards by Field-Marshal Sir Evelyn Wood, V.C.



His duties are to protect the person of the Sovereign, and to receive from the Sovereign any orders relating to the Household Cavalry,* and pass them to the Silver Stick-in-Waiting for promulgation.

In the absence of the Gold Stick his duties devolve on the Silver Stick.

THE SILVER STICK-IN-WAITING

The Silver Stick-in-Waiting for the month will be detailed alternately from the Household Cavalry Regiments quartered in London. The Roster will commence with the regiment last arriving in London, who will find the Silver Stick-in-Waiting for the month in which they arrive. The duties of the Silver Stick-in-Waiting are—under the authority of the Gold Stick-in-Waiting—to promulgate all orders to the Household Cavalry issued during his month of duty, whether to be performed during his month or at a future date, and detail the regiments to find the duties.

He will assume the duties of the Gold Stick-in-Waiting should he be absent.

The precedence of the Gold and Silver Sticks-in-Waiting and their positions as Court Officials, as decided by the

*

23rd July, 1924.

I have now received His Majesty's Commands to assure you that the King has no wish for any departure to be made from the Privileges and Customs enjoyed by his Household Cavalry.

Consequently, the Sovereign's Commands to the Household Cavalry in connection with State Occasions will continue to be issued, as hitherto, to the Gold Stick in Waiting through the intermediary of the Lord Chamberlain or an Officer of his Department.

In order, however, to facilitate the general arrangements connected with the Military details of State Ceremonials, it is the King's wish that a copy of the Sovereign's Orders to the Gold Stick should be furnished to the General Officer Commanding London District, in order that he may be made acquainted with the nature of the Military Orders issued to the Household Cavalry. [Lord Chamberlain to Gold Stick.]

6 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

late Lord Esher and approved by her late Majesty Queen Victoria, is appended.*

THE SILVER STICK ADJUTANT

The Silver Stick Adjutant will accompany the Silver Stick whenever Household Cavalry troops are on duty. He will remain sufficiently near to the Silver Stick to receive his orders and pass them on to the troops concerned. He is on no account to enter the Throne Room.

The Silver Stick Medical Officer and the Silver Stick Quartermaster will perform such duties as may be required by the Silver Stick.

They will be responsible for the sanitary condition of all quarters, guard rooms, etc., in the joint occupation of the Household Cavalry.

ROSTER

The Regiment on duty shall be determined by a Roster issued by the Silver Stick-in-Waiting.

The Roster will commence with the Regiment last arriving in London, on the second day after their arrival.

STATE DUTIES

The Regiment on duty will find :—

1. The King's Life Guard.
2. Guards of Honour.
3. Sovereign's Escort.†
4. Captain's Escort with Standard.

* The precedence of the Silver Stick over the Field Officer in Brigade Waiting was fully dealt with in earlier volumes.

†

Hyde Park Barracks,

17.2.05.

G.S.O.

The Master of the Horse desires it to be made known to all the Officers of the Household Cavalry that at Functions where more than three carriages are in the Procession, the Escort must remain outside in the Fore Court, and on the occasion of Levees, etc., when only three

5. Captain's Escort without Standard.
6. Prince of Wales's Escort.
7. Escorts for other members of the Royal Family.
8. Travelling Escorts.
9. Other Escorts.
10. Dismounted party for the House of Lords.

The Regiment off duty will find :—

Street and Park parties.

Should the Regiment on duty not be able to find the whole of the duties assigned to it, the Regiment off duty will do them as required, starting from the bottom of the list.

The strength of the Guards, Escorts, etc., will be as follows :—

King's Life Guard (when His Majesty is in London).—
1 Captain, 1 Subaltern, 1 Corporal-Major, 2 Corporals of Horse, 1 Corporal, 1 Farrier, 1 Trumpeter, 27 Troopers.

King's Life Guard (when His Majesty is not in London).—
1 Corporal of Horse, 1 Corporal, 13 Troopers.

*Sovereign's Escort (Field Officer's Escort).—*1 Field Officer, 2 Captains, 4 Subalterns, 2 Corporal-Majors, 8 Corporals of Horse, 2 Farriers, 1 Trumpeter, 96 Troopers.

*Captain's Escort with Standard.—*1 Captain, 2 Subalterns, 1 Corporal-Major, 3 Corporals of Horse, 1 Farrier, 1 Trumpeter, 52 Troopers.

*Captain's Escort without Standard.—*1 Captain, 1 Subaltern, 1 Corporal-Major, 3 Corporals of Horse, 1 Farrier, 27 Troopers.

*Prince of Wales's Escort.—*1 Subaltern, 1 Corporal-Major, 2 Corporals of Horse, 28 Troopers.

carriages are used it may form up inside the Quadrangle at Buckingham Palace.

(Sd.) C. ANSTRUTHER THOMSON,
Lt.-Col. 2nd Life Gds.,
Silver Stick-in-Waiting.

8 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

Escorts for other members of the Royal Family.—As directed.

Escort for Speaker of House of Commons.—1 Trooper.

Escort for Regalia.—1 Corporal of Horse, 6 Troopers.

Travelling Escort for H.M. The King and H.M. The Queen.—2 Subalterns, 2 Corporals of Horse, 12 Troopers.

Escort for Commander-in-Chief.—1 N.C.O., 12 Troopers.

Other Travelling Escorts.—Same as for Her Majesty, but with only 1 Corporal of Horse.

Guards of Honour.—1 Captain, 2 Subalterns, 1 Corporal-Major, 2 Corporals of Horse, 1 Farrier, 1 Trumpeter, 45 Troopers.

Street and Park Parties.—Strength as required.

DRESS

Officers of the Household Cavalry on State occasions will wear :—

When Mounted.—Helmets and plumes, tunics, cuirasses, gold belts, leather breeches, gauntlet gloves, and jack boots.

When Dismounted.—The same, without cuirasses.

At Balls.—Red striped overalls will be worn instead of boots and breeches by Officers not on duty.

Officers with the dismounted party in the House of Lords, at the State Opening of Parliament will wear cuirasses when they are worn by the men.

Schabraques will be worn on State occasions.

Review Order, Mounted.—As for State occasions.*

* The new shabracque brought into wear after the War is described as " of blue cloth " trimmed with $2\frac{1}{2}$ -inch gold oakle of lace ; corners embroidered with battle honours surmounting the Garter Star, surmounted by Lion and Crown.

Fore corners : Dettingen, Peninsula, Waterloo, Egypt, 1882, Tel-el-Kebir, Relief of Kimberley, Paardeburg, S. Africa, 1899-1900.

Hind corners : Mons, Le Cateau, Marne, 1914, Aisne, 1914, Messines, 1914, Ypres, 1914-15-17, Ghelewell, Somme, 1916-18, Arras, 1917-18, Hindenburg Line.

Review Order, Dismounted.—Helmets plumed, tunics, with gold belts (if His Majesty or any of the Royal Family are present), gauntlet gloves, and red-striped overalls.

King's Guard, Mounted.—As for Review Order, but with white belts and bearskins, instead of gold belts and schabraques.

G.S.O. dated 24.II.04.

Officers of the Household Cavalry are to wear their sword slings underneath the tunic on all mounted parades and dismounted parades.

(Sd.) C. E. BINGHAM, Lieut.-Col.,
S.-S.-in-W.

With the peace of Vereeniging came the award of the King's medals as well as the distribution of those earned in the previous reign. Although the Composite Regiment came home at the end of 1900, several officers and N.C.O.'s made their way back to South Africa, either on special service or with the Imperial Yeomanry, and could claim the double award. One of the medals about to be bestowed came under the notice of King Edward, and the prospective recipient being entitled "Private," the King would have none of it. The original term "Private Gentleman" might have fallen into desuetude and the Royal Horse Guards might have no historical claim to it, but the soldiers who had once been styled "Satellites Domini Regis vocati Lifeguards" must have some distinction, and the designation "Trooper" was ordained. It was respectfully submitted that "Trooper" was not an official, but only a colloquial, term; that point had been raised and settled in the case of the Imperial Yeomanry. The objection was brushed aside; if "Trooper" had not hitherto been officially recognised, the sooner such recognition were secured, the better the

Sovereign would be pleased, and meanwhile the medals should be re-engraved. Accordingly, though not without some delay from the War Office, the order was issued : " The word ' Trooper ' will in future be employed instead of the word ' Private ' to describe a private soldier of the Household Cavalry. All regulations will be amended accordingly."

After the Boer War, annual manœuvres which Lord Wolseley had revived were renewed, and Life Guards and Blues were always represented either as a composite regiment or a Household Brigade. In 1909 occurred the unfortunate happening when the " Households " clashed with the First Cavalry Brigade from Aldershot, with whom they had already found themselves on more than equal terms. It was a misty morning, and the brigade was drawn up in line on one side of Weathercock Hill, Laffan's Plain. On the other side of the ridge was the First Cavalry Brigade. Simultaneously the scouts of either brigade sighted the enemy. Simultaneously each brigade was ordered to charge. So close were they that men could hear the orders shouted to their opponents. The charge was launched, the men could not be stopped, and they met with a crash on the brow. The superior weight of the Household Cavalrymen swept the First Cavalry Brigade back to their own side of the hill. Two men of a Lancer Regiment were killed outright, and casualties were numerous. A Corporal-Major and Trooper of the Second Life Guards were injured, the former breaking his thigh.

Two years later manœuvres had to be hurriedly postponed—a drought being offered for the rather thin reason—and the troops held ready to speak with their future antagonists. The German fist had been thumped on the table, and a German warship, the *Panther*, had anchored off Agadir, while the Kaiser delivered a blustering speech

which, if not followed up by an actual landing of his sailors, served to quicken the apprehensions of those who read the meaning of it accurately.

It was in this year, 1911, that the First Life Guards were hurriedly brought from Pirbright to Regent's Park on the occasion of the engineers' strike, which was considered of some gravity. In the troop rooms at night only every alternate man was allowed to go to bed, and he fully dressed, and one night an urgent message was received to the effect that a thousand strikers were advancing on the power station at Neasden: the police were hardly holding them up, and orders were received to turn out one squadron fully equipped. The Duke of Teck, the senior officer in barracks, ordered "C" Squadron, under Major Cookson, to parade. The Squadron turned out in blue drill clothing, helmets, cuirasses and gauntlets, with collar chains fixed to the bits, and were inspected on parade by the Duke, clad in pyjamas, red cloak, and forage cap. As the squadron was filing out of barracks news was received that the strikers had dispersed, and that the police could deal with any lingering malcontent.

In 1912 the King lodged at Trinity College, Cambridge, and followed the operations, the opposing armies being commanded by Sir Douglas Haig and General Grierson. The future Marshal Foch,* who had just been sent to the École Supérieure, came to England for the occasion, expressed himself as specially struck by the keenness of the officers and the pace of the Infantry in attack, and he took particular notice of the appearance and work of the Household Cavalry. It is on record that in con-

* A not very wise staff officer asked the General how many men he expected England to contribute in the event of war. The answer was "Send me one man; I will take care he is killed, and I shall have the British nation in arms."

12 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

versation with a foreign Attaché, the French General expressed himself with some certainty as to an imminent war ; it is equally certain that the men did not realise that here was the future commander of the combined French and British forces in the field.

The manœuvres in 1913, which were witnessed both by the King and Queen, were more in the nature of a dress rehearsal for war than tactical exercises. The Expeditionary Force was formed and moved as such, and the chief difference between its composition then and a year later was that, owing to disagreement, General Grierson resigned his post of Chief of the Staff, and was appointed to the command of the Second Corps.* It was now also that the Household Cavalry wore khaki for the first time on manœuvres, enjoying the distinction of being the only troops without cap badges, no such badge having hitherto been designed for their wear. The service dress badges extant were only issued when the composite Regiment was under orders for France, as on previous occasions the Household Brigade had worn blue, which had placed them at a considerable disadvantage when manœuvring against other troops.

* Less than a year later General Grierson died suddenly in the train when on his way to assume his command in the field.

CHAPTER II

ON May 6th, 1910, there occurred, not unexpectedly, but with no lingering of pain or weakness, the death of King Edward VII. No Sovereign had ever been quite so closely associated with the inner life, as well as with the outer circumstance, of the Household Cavalry. His great grandfather had shown a rather childish predilection for the Blues, and fretfully insisted on their being retained for an inconveniently long period at Windsor. But King Edward had at heart the real interests of the three Regiments ; he had rejoiced in their selection for active service in North and South Africa ; he had pleaded to be allowed to serve with them in the Soudan ; he had marked with close attention and eager satisfaction their every action and delighted in any war distinction bestowed on them. At home he examined every point affecting their prestige or position ; he recognised their special relation to the Sovereign's household and the rightful precedence accorded to the Silver Stick under the ruling of the Master of the Rolls was due to his firm representation to Queen Victoria.

The body of the King Emperor lay in state at Westminster Hall for three days and officers of the Household Cavalry were posted in what had been converted into a *chapelle ardente*. A fortnight after his death, King Edward was carried to his resting-place at Windsor. In the long procession which passed at a foot's pace from Westminster to Paddington rode seven crowned heads, foremost amongst them the German Emperor, who had pursued his uncle in life with envy and hatred, and on

14 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

the day of his burial was to make an infamous proposal to the French Ambassador. The Sovereign's escort was formed by the Life Guards, but by some flaw in arrangement the Adjutant-General rode between the officers commanding the escort and the gun carriage bearing the corpse, a breach of precedent which did not pass without remark.*

From Windsor station to St. George's Chapel the procession passed on foot, and the Royal Horse Guards furnished a field officer's escort, formed as usual, but dismounted,† and marching with swords reversed. The order was not without significance; it re-affirmed, and was no doubt intended to re-affirm, the peculiar circumstances of the Household Cavalry as the immediate *entourage* of the Sovereign on occasions of ceremony, mounted or dismounted, as their august master might himself be, or ordain. A question of procedure had, however, arisen, and one which went to the roots of the formation of the original Troops of Horse Guards. Throughout the ten days which elapsed before the body of King Edward was carried to Westminster Hall, the protective duty had been entrusted to the Grenadier Guards, whereas it had always been the creed of the Household Cavalry that no armed parties other than drawn from themselves were permitted to penetrate inside the precincts of the Royal Palace. Could any precedent, it was asked, be found for this departure from

* It should be placed distinctly on record that the position of the senior officers of the Escort on the occasion of the funeral procession is not to be considered as a precedent for any individual to march between such officers, whatever escort it may be, and the Royal Carriage (Order Book).

† The order was repeated scarcely six months later, when, at the funeral of Prince Francis of Teck—the brother of the Queen Consort—a Captain's escort of the Blues with standard attended the King, dismounted, on the same path.

what had been recognised as an inviolable rule ? Superficially the question may have seemed lacking in weight and to offer the obvious answer that the Sovereign within his demesne could order what persons he pleased to perform whatever duties he might prescribe. Actually the crux was whether the Household Cavalry had or had not special privileges, special relations, and special responsibilities which were summed up in, and illustrated by, the functions of the Gold Stick.

The Colonel of the First Life Guards addressed himself to the King's Private Secretary :

" 10th May, 1910.

" As Silver Stick-in-Waiting I am urged by the Household Cavalry to ask you to place on record their respectful protest against any Troops, other than themselves, being allowed in a Royal Palace.

" It has always been their proud possession that they were actually the Body Guard of the Sovereign and therefore the sole possessors of this privilege.

" As Osborne House was not a Royal Palace, no protest was made at the time of Queen Victoria's death at the Grenadier Guards and others being allowed to enter the precincts and watch their Sovereign's remains ; and you will understand that, at this moment, they are diffident of raising any point of controversy and ask to be allowed to assure His Majesty of their absolute obedience to His Wishes and Commands."

The reply was guarded but sympathetic ; it suggested that an exhaustive memorandum might be drawn up to exhibit the ground on which the protest rested, and it was arranged that the Brigade of Guards should be invited to deliver a *riposte* and that the " cases " should in the first instance be argued by Colonel Nugent, Grenadier Guards, and Major Marker, Coldstream Guards, on the one side, and by Colonel Vaughan Lee, R.H.G., and the present writer on the other before the G.O.C., London District. The " case " of the Household Cavalry, which relied largely on documentation, took the form of a petition.

The Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards humbly submit, for reference to the King's pleasure, that, in virtue of their funda-

16 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

mental constitution and of their special association with the Royal Household, to them and to them alone has been accorded the privilege of doing military duty, armed or unarmed, within doors at the Royal Palaces * ; and that, notwithstanding the distinguished position occupied by, and the dignified functions entrusted to, the Brigade of Guards, the unique personal and quasi-domestic service which the Brigade of Household Cavalry has throughout its history rendered to the Sovereign is clearly proved by the precedents of two-and-a-half centuries.

Royal Body
Guards.

The Yeomen of the Guard, the Gentlemen-at-Arms, and the Life Guards have all been at different times charged with the duty of closely guarding the Person of the King. The first-named body, created by Henry VII. in 1485, was presumably deemed inadequate by Henry VIII., when in 1509 he instituted the Corps of Gentlemen Pensioners (now the Honourable Corps of Gentlemen-at-Arms) ; and Charles II.—for whatever reason—deemed it necessary to supplement both by the establishment of a military corps of Life Guards. From the time of their origin “ the Gentlemen of the King’s Life Guard ” were brought into the closest possible relation with the Person of the Sovereign.

Life Guards.

Almost immediately after their creation an official Latin document (Pell’s *Issue Rolls*) makes mention of the “ *Satellites Domini Regis vocati* the Life Guards.”

The term “ *Satellites* ” is not inaptly applied to a body of Guards of which every individual member was personally selected and appointed by the King himself. It is recorded that on May 28th, 1660, the day preceding his triumphant entry into his capital, “ His Majesty made choice of 80 Gentlemen to be of his Life Guard.”

Household
Troops.

The term “ Household ” has only in quite recent years come to be applied—by way of loose usage—to other troops than those of the Household Cavalry, to whom alone the title formerly appertained. In the General Orders issued for the Funerals of George III., George IV., and William IV., the term “ Household ” is used of the Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards, and of no others. In a letter addressed to William IV. on July 30th, 1830, and resigning the colonelcy of the Blues, the Duke of Cumberland

* The term “ Royal Palace ” does not apply to private residence of the Sovereign, such as Osborne House, Balmoral Castle and Sandringham ; it included, however, Carlton House.

designates the Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards "the Household Brigade," and King William in his reply accepting the Duke's resignation applies the same phrase to these three Cavalry Regiments. (See Appendices B, C, and E.)*

The Badges worn by the Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards, as an outward and visible sign that these regiments exclusively belong to the Household, are (1) the *Flash Cord* common to all ranks, and identical with that worn by Royal servants when travelling on duty; and (2) the *Aiguillettes*, peculiar to Officers and Non-commissioned Officers, which are worn by the former, as Equerries wear theirs, on the right shoulder, and by the latter over the left shoulder, as is done by the Royal footmen when habited in State liveries.

Nor was the Life Guards' function at any time merely ornamental or reserved for ceremonial occasions, but was in the highest degree practical. As their name implies, and their history proves, they were meant to be, and they were, Protectors of the King's Life.

Life Guards
to Guard the
King's Life.

Composed of the most select body of competent Noblemen and Gentlemen in the Kingdom, the Life Guard had the perpetual care—even in Holland, and before the Restoration—of His Majesty's Person. The supreme responsibility with which the three Colonels of the Life Guards were charged in 1678† is, in fact, a special and particular application of the general duty already laid upon the Life Guard—the duty for which it had been called into being. The Gold and Silver Sticks enjoy in its most concentrated form the privilege bestowed on the whole Corps of which they are the Commandants, and they enjoy it for no other reason than that of their being its Commandants.‡ The whole *raison d'être* of the Life Guard was that it should perpetually and without intermission watch over the King's Life; the function

Gold Stick.

* *The Pilot* (May, 1812) illustrates current usage when it alludes to "The Life Guards who are regarded as Household Troops of the Crown, and left out of the general arrangement and control of the Army." The same journal, in January, 1813, makes mention of "the three regiments of cavalry of the King's household."

† The date 1578, given in the Standing Orders of the Second Life Guards, is a palpable clerical error for 1678.

‡ The final and formal inclusion of the Royal Horse Guards (Blue) in the Household Cavalry was marked and consummated in 1820 by the bestowal on their Colonel of the office of Gold Stick.

of the Gold Stick-in-Waiting, and of his deputy and assistant the Silver Stick, was to *intensify this vigilance to the point of never quitting the Person of the Sovereign for a single instant*. Upon the Gold Stick was laid the obligation of "attending on the King on foot, wheresoever he walks, from his rising to his going to bed," the Officer always waiting "immediately next to the King's own Person, before all others." * *No similar responsibility was ever laid on the commandant of any other military unit.*

His Cere-
monial
Position.

It is only these historical considerations that suffice to explain the ceremonial position assigned to the Gold Stick-in-Waiting. Thus, at the Coronation of James II., in the Procession, the Duke of Northumberland, as Gold Stick-in-Waiting, walked next behind the King, supported by the Captain of the Corps of Gentlemen Pensioners and the Captain of the Yeoman of the Guard. In George III.'s funeral procession, the Gold Stick walked between the Captain of the Band of Gentlemen Pensioners and the Groom of the Stole. Immediately in front were the Lords of the Bedchamber, and immediately following him were the Banners, the Lord Chamberlain and Lord Steward, and the Body.

Even more remarkable and significant is the place he occupied in the funeral *cortège* of George IV., when Gold Stick walked *immediately in the rear of the King himself*, and of His Majesty's two supporters, *and in front even of the Princes of the Blood*. That he should now walk immediately next the Person of the new Sovereign, who was chief mourner, instead of in his former position at George III.'s funeral, was due to the fact that at the burial of George III. the chief mourner was the Duke of York, as George IV. was not present. The Gold Stick had thus no duty to perform in the way of attendance on the Person of the Sovereign.

At William IV.'s burial, where again no Sovereign was present, Gold Stick performed the unusual, and—regarded historically—not very logical function of carrying the Royal Standard; while his place, as on the last occasion but one, was in immediate proximity to the Lord Steward and the Lord Chamberlain.

Of special interest is the recorded fact that, in 1887, at the solemnisation at Westminster Abbey of the Jubilee of Queen Victoria's Accession, the Gold Stick stood *immediately behind the*

* "In the Queen's Bedchamber after supper, we of the Bedchamber and my Lord Dover, as Captain of the Life Guard, had admittance."—*Ailesbury Memoirs*, p. 159.

Coronation Chair in which the Queen was seated, the Princes and Princesses of the Blood being ranged on either side of it.

The distinction between the Life Guard and other troops bearing the title of "Guard" is real and definite. In the original establishment, with the exception of the three Troops of Life Guards, the title of "Guard" is used somewhat vaguely. The first Pay List of the Army, now at the Record Office,* makes reference to the Blues as "*A Regiment of Horse*"; Russell's Foot Guards being described as "*a Regiment of Foot* consisting of Ten companies." A similar document ("*Establishment to be Mended*") makes mention of—

"Guards"
and
Life Guards.

The Three Troops of *Guards*,

A *Regiment of Horse* (the Blues),

A *Regiment of Foot* (Russell's, eventually in 1665 incorporated with the Regiment of Foot Guards—Wentworth's—left behind at Dunkirk),

The Duke of Albemarle's Regiment of Foot (the Coldstream).

A third list, bearing Charles II.'s Sign Manual, names "Our Regiment of Foot," "Our *Grall's* Regt. of Foot," and "Our Regt. of Horse."

It was not long before the official usage was well established by which the title of "Guards" was invariably applied to all these Regiments. Nevertheless, there was from the first a well-marked distinction between the Life Guard attached to the Household and the Guards—*whether Horse or Foot*—who were not so attached.

The conclusion to be drawn is that the title of "Guard" does not carry with it the functions specially assigned to the Life Guards.

The Life Guards, though normally, were not invariably, mounted. They were and are the King's Household Guards always and everywhere—*mounted or unmounted*, as the duties to be discharged may require. When on guard within the doors of a Royal Palace they are not to be regarded as dismounted Horsemen. Chamberlayne in "*Magnæ Britannicæ Notitia*" (1748) relates that the King is attended on foot by the Horse Grenadiers attached to the Division of Life Guards on Guard.

Life Guards
mounted or
unmounted.

This point can be amply illustrated from their history. Among early instances of their doing duty on foot are their appointment to escort the King on foot in Holland, before His Majesty's happy

* *Domestic State Papers.*

20 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

Restoration ; their attendance on foot at a Court Ball in 1664, and at the Grand Duke of Tuscany's entertainment in 1669, and again at Lincoln's Inn in 1671. Apparently they accompanied James II. to Mass in 1685. An unbroken line of Court ceremonials exhibits representatives of the Household Cavalry employed within the Palace, and to this day unmounted Troopers of the Household Cavalry are stationed there, to preserve the tradition.

The Gold and Silver Sticks were brought in the discharge of their duties into the closest and most intimate attendance on the Sovereign. The Gold Stick-in-Waiting habitually rode in the King's Coach, and sometimes slept in the Royal Bedchamber. A Gold Stick, Lord Feversham, was present at Charles II.'s death-bed ; Colonel Edward Griffin, as Silver Stick, was in waiting at the accouchement of James II.'s Queen, when her only son was born ; William III. expired in the presence of the Duke of Ormonde, the Gold Stick-in-Waiting.

A few other instances are worthy of mention. In 1811 the Prince Regent, on June 19th, gave a grand party at Carlton House, at which the Blues kept the street, while the First Life Guards furnished Mounted Escort, and *the Second Life Guards were posted within doors to furnish sentries to the Banqueting Room*, as well as in the gardens. After George IV.'s Coronation, at a Levée held at Carlton House on July 25th, 1821, the Life Guards were on duty "dressed in armour after the style of Cuirassiers." Two of the Corps were stationed in the Grand Hall. It is to be observed that Carlton House was a Royal Palace, and not the private property of the Sovereign or Regent. The customary usage appears from the Annual Register of 1921 (p. 113), which speaks of it as the "Palace in Pall Mall."

Their
Household
Duties.

Thus the whole history of the Household Cavalry exhibits them as *continuously and on all occasions fulfilling Household duties within the Palace portals on ceremonial occasions*. The principle is illustrated in Queen Victoria's farewell address to the Household Cavalry on their departure for South Africa : "I have asked you, *who have always served near me*, to come here that I may take leave of you before you start on your long voyage," etc.

At Royal
Obsequies.

This question as to the Household Cavalry doing duty within doors at the Royal Palaces having become acute on the occasion of the recent demise of the Crown it is relevant to observe the procedure adopted at the obsequies of successive Sovereigns.

On the death of Queen Anne, " the Lord Marshal's directions to the Commanding Officers of the Foot Guards " with respect to the Funeral are to the effect that " a serjeant and 12 men are to be posted from Whitehall to King Street, and to suffer no obstruction," etc. ; a serjeant and 12 men are to be at " Tuttle " Street gateway and at " Stories " Gate, and " to allow no coaches other than mourning coaches to pass " ; a lieutenant and 40 men are to be at the great door at Westminster Hall, " to keep the Hall clear of people, and to let no one enter who has not arrived in a mourning coach." Four " Centinels " from the Lieutenant's Guard are to be at the steps leading up to the House of Commons ; the Colonel is to place " Centinels " upon " the scaffold, erected in the Church, to prevent any company sitting there," and " he is to take all possible care to keep the Church clear of people not required to attend " (Harl. MSS. 6815). The duties here detailed amount to little more than those regarded to-day as proper to police.

Q. Anne
Funeral.

King George I. died abroad and was buried there.

George I.

Highly pertinent to the present occasion is the precedent afforded by the Lying-in-State of the remains of George II. The Lords of the Council, on November 6th, 1760, issued two Orders—one addressed to the Foot Guards, the other to the Life Guards (*see* Appendix A), of which the salient points are here quoted :

George II.
Lying-in-
State.

I

Ordered : " that a party of *Foot Guards* do *attend at* the Princes' Chamber at Westminster on Monday, the 10th of this instant, being the day appointed for the removal of His Late Majesty's Body from Kensington to the said Chamber, and that *the said Guard shall continue till the time of the Funeral.* . . . "

(Foot Guards also to line " the passage," *i.e.*, the route ; also to supply a guard in New Palace Yard.)

II

Ordered : " that a Party of *Horse Guards* do *attend the Removal of His late Majesty's Body* to the Princes' Chamber at Westminster on Monday the 10th of this instant at such time as . . . the Duke of Devonshire . . . shall appoint, and that a Party do *also attend upon His Majesty's Body during the time it remains in the said Chamber.* . . . "

(Another party to be near the Abbey, etc.)

It is to be noted that the precedent of George II.'s obsequies shows

22 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

the Life Guard in attendance upon the King's Body both during its removal and while it is lying in state.

The direction to the Life Guards to attend the Body is explicit ; whereas the other Order is less definite, merely directing an attendance at the Chamber, with no specific mention of guarding the Body at all.

If the two Orders mean the same thing, it is at least worth notice that the difference in their phraseology should be so strongly marked.

George III.
Lying-in-
State.

Of the Lying-in-State of the remains of George III. at Windsor Castle, in 1820, mention is made in the ANNUAL REGISTER for that year, page 692, that it was attended by *the Life Guards unmounted*, by the Yeomen of the Guard, and by the Gentlemen-at-Arms—no others being named.

Funeral.

A General Order issued on February 16th, 1820, on the occasion of George III.'s Funeral, contains the following :

"The Household Brigade"—that is, as the context shows, the Household Cavalry, also called elsewhere "the Household Brigade of Cavalry," and "the Household Troops"—"will send a Captain's Guard with a Standard and an increased proportion of Officers *to line the Great Staircase and Entrance to the Castle* from the Room where the Gentlemen Pensioners are stationed to the Entrance of the Castle ; also nine Orderly men to be placed *in the Room* with the Yeomen of the Guard, three of each Regiment, in the same manner as the Orderly men have been placed at St. James's and at Carlton Palace. They are to *follow the Procession* after the Gentlemen Pensioners and Yeomen of the Guard who have Arms, at seven p.m." (See Appendix B.) The Foot Guards provide a Guard of Honour in the Castle Yard.

Thus the precedent of George III.'s obsequies confirms and reinforces that furnished by the case of George II.

George IV.
Funeral.

The General Order issued on July 14th, 1830, on the occasion of George IV.'s Funeral directs that "*the Grand Staircase* be lined on each side by men of the Household Brigade" (*i.e.*, Household Cavalry) "drawn in equal proportions from each Regiment" ; that "the Platform be lined" with men from the three Regiments of Foot Guards ; that "*the centre of the Chapel* be lined by men from the Household Troops" (*i.e.*, Household Cavalry), "and in equal numbers from each Regiment." The Body is to be received by a Guard of Honour, which is to be drawn from all three Regiments of Foot Guards, *not from one only.* (See Appendix C.)

As to the Lying-in-State of George IV., it is true that no mention occurs in the Annual Register for 1830, page 109, etc., of any part taken in it, either by the Life Guard or by any other military guard ; yet a contemporary engraving of the scene clearly shows *two Privates of the Life Guards on duty in the Chamber where the Royal Body lay.**

Lying-in-State.

The record of the obsequies of George IV. strengthens the precedent as to the position allotted to the Household Cavalry in the ceremonial.

For an account of the arrangement made at the Lying-in-State of William IV. reference may be made to *The Times* of Friday, July 7th, 1837, page 5, col. 1, describing how in the Waterloo Chamber at Windsor, where the King's Body lay, there sat at the head of the coffin a Lord of the Bedchamber, supported by two Grooms of the Bedchamber. On each side of the Body were two Gentlemen Ushers, and on the lowest of the three steps of the platform there stood on each side a Gentleman-at-Arms, a Yeoman of the Guard, *an Officer of the Life Guards* and a Herald in his Tabard.

William IV.
Lying-in-State.

The Funeral was carried out on lines similar to those laid down for that of George IV. A General Order of July 1st, 1837, prescribes the *lining of the Grand Staircase by the Household Brigade (i.e., Household Cavalry)* ; the lining of the route outside St. George's Chapel, and within the Chapel as far as the Screen by the Foot Guards ; and the *lining of the choir* (" Centre of the Chapel ") by the Household Cavalry Brigade on foot. (See Appendix E.)

Funeral.

The Times of Monday, July 10th, 1837, pages 4, 5, describing the North Aisle and Nave of the Chapel, says : " A row of the *Life Guards and Blues lined each side of the centre platform.*"

To the Household Cavalry, therefore, were assigned positions nearest to the start and to the finish of the Funeral March ; the Foot Guards lining merely the intermediate route.

The fact is therefore established that at the Lying-in-State of

* It is admitted that, at the Lying-in-State of the Duke of York in St. James's Palace, in 1827, the Grenadiers were detailed to remain in the apartment—a special honour which devolved on them because the Prince was their Colonel. With this exception, the Foot Guards would seem not to have been on ceremonial duty within the doors of a Royal Palace until the death of King Edward VII.

24 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

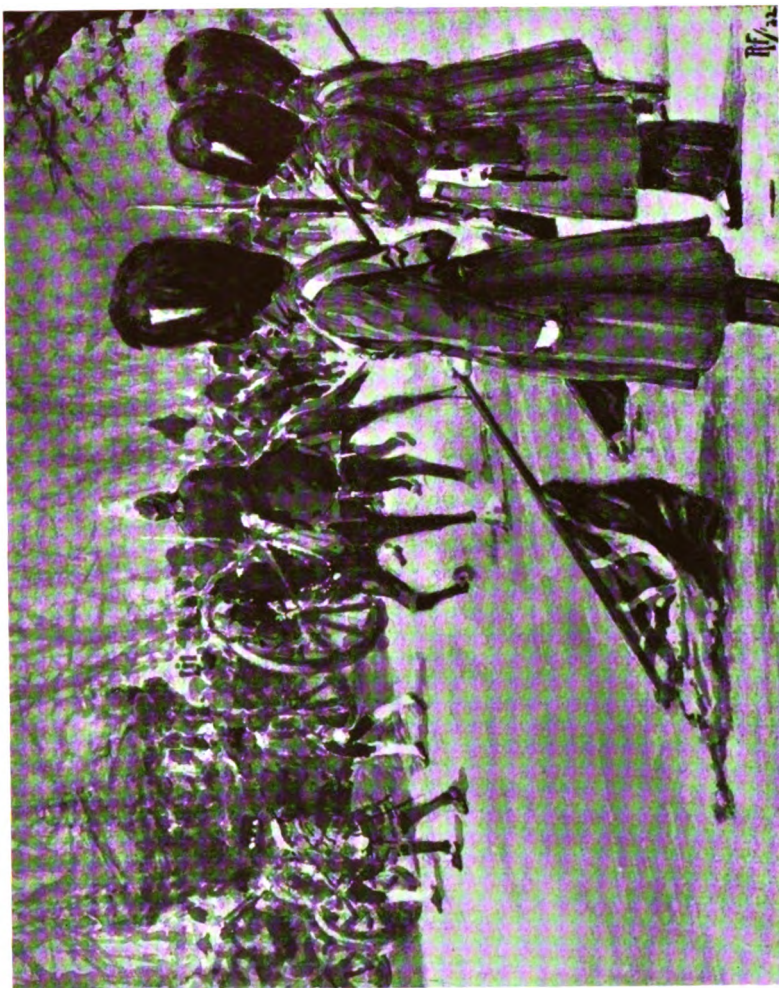
George II., George III., George IV. and William IV., the only military guard of the King's Body was supplied by the Household Cavalry.

Q. Victoria. If it be alleged that the case of Queen Victoria creates a new precedent, it is obvious to reply that arrangements which obtained at a private residence such as Osborne House could not avail to fix the procedure to be observed at a Royal Palace ; but it may be observed that, even on the occasion of Queen Victoria's Funeral, the Bearer parties included Non-commissioned Officers of the Household Cavalry, who thus assisted to guard in death the Body of the Sovereign whose Person in life they had been peculiarly and especially charged to protect.

All which is humbly submitted to the King's Majesty for His Majesty's Gracious consideration.

The " cases " were eventually forwarded by command of the King for the consideration of the former Lord Chancellor. Lord Halsbury, after sufficient delay to give an additional spice of dignity to his reply, delivered his judgment ; this, when stripped of its legal bells and harness, resolved itself into a pronouncement—with which both contending parties were in complete accord, but which did nothing to traverse the record of the Household Cavalry—that the Sovereign must not be trammelled by precedent in the selection of any of his servants, for any duty which he might at any time and in any place be disposed to assign to them.

The coronation of King George and Queen Mary in the Abbey Church at Westminster took place on June 22nd, 1911, when the Sovereigns' escort was furnished by the Royal Horse Guards, the First Life Guards coming up from Windsor to take their part in the State duties. All the troops on parade were under the command of Lord Kitchener, who, at his own special wish, was mounted on Captain Harold Brassey's first charger,



which was considered to be an animal of peerless merit.* The whole occasion was better ordered than the ceremony of nine years earlier, which had suffered in many of its details from its postponement to the month of August; the accidents, minor delays and unfortunate hitches respecting the escorts which marked what had been the first coronation to happen for over sixty years were carefully avoided now, and, although the orders to the troops made up a weighty volume of 212 pages, so smoothly were the elaborate arrangements carried out that not a single casualty occurred, and within an hour of the conclusion of the service in the Abbey the G.O.C. had received every report, and knew that the task of the troops was accomplished and that they were being duly cared for.

Quickly following the coronation festivities, with only a brief respite from ceremonial, came the visit of the Sovereign—with his Consort—to his Indian Empire, where he held High Durbar and set the seal of his approval to the transfer of the capital to Delhi. When King Edward VII. as Prince of Wales made his progress through India, Lord Napier of Magdala proposed that the Prince should have a bodyguard of twenty picked Lifeguardsmen who, on public occasions, would be always about his person and would prevent unauthorised persons from having access to him. The proposal was not adopted in 1876, but was renewed in 1911, and in King George's suite figured Corporal-Major Jones, First Life Guards, Corporal of Horse Pilcher, Second Life Guards, and Corporal of Horse Meech, Royal Horse Guards,

* In April, 1916, Kitchener, on his last tour of inspection in France, saw the battalion to command which Harold Brassey had been transferred from the Royal Horse Guards. The War Secretary had a long conversation with the Battalion Commander, and inquired after the famous horse: within three months both soldiers had fallen at the hands of the enemy.

whose full dress—although the silver helmet gave way to one made of pith—was at least the equal of the gorgeous native uniforms displayed.

In the summer of 1880, when Queen Victoria bestowed the Colonelcy (in Chief) of the Household Cavalry on her Heir-Apparent, she determined to hold a review in Windsor Park, so that he might lead his three regiments past her. Immediately after his accession, King George vested the Supreme Command of the Life Guards and Blues in himself, and decided that the afternoon ceremony of June, 1880, should be repeated on the morning of June 17th, 1913. With a bevy of princes and famous soldiers, the King rode on to the ground to find the troops drawn up in line, with the Blues in the centre, contrary to the then custom, but making an admirable effect, "a blue body with red wings," as an effusive journalist wrote, "flecked with gold and lit up by the twinkling of the sun on many breastplates." The march past was in column of squadrons, and after the massed bands came the three regiments, the veteran Lord Grenfell, a little uneasy in his accoutrements, at the head of the First Life Guards, Sir Evelyn Wood, who had evidently paid unusual attention to his personal appearance, leading the Blues, and a gallant cavalry officer, the Earl of Dundonald, riding in front of his own old regiment. The "trot past" was immediately followed by a gallop, which led up to a charge so picturesque as to move the sober *Times* newspaper to a glowing period: "The troops almost disappeared for a moment in the far distance; then they galloped comparatively gently till they were past some outstanding trees. Then with one united and terrifying yell they charged straight down upon the stands. The gallop had been nothing to this. Right across the big level stretch of grass they came with a most thunderous noise; on and on, so that it was

something of a relief when they pulled up, still some little way off, and with the long line still beautifully and mathematically straight, the onlookers still untrampled. Taking the time from the Brigadier, Colonel Cook, they then gave three tremendous cheers * before forming into brigade mass."

The King then rode out, and in tones which cut clear across the parade ground addressed the Brigadier :

" Colonel Cook—It is a great pleasure and satisfaction to me to have held this Review of the three Regiments of my Household Cavalry. Although, both in London and in Windsor, you are intimately associated with my everyday life, it is impossible, under ordinary conditions, to see you all together on one Parade. But, whether engaged in your daily duties, or on State ceremonials, or in the Field, individually as troopers, collectively as Regiments, the British Household Cavalry justly bears a reputation of world-wide renown.

" Your special duties near the person of the Sovereign have never stood in the way of your active service in the field abroad, the record of which extends from Flanders in 1673 to South Africa in 1900. At Waterloo you earned the famous ' Thank you ' from the Duke of Wellington. From Lord Wolseley in Egypt, from Lord Roberts in South Africa, you gained the highest praise. Such noble traditions create *esprit de corps*, and thus foster that discipline and splendid military bearing which you have shown to-day, making me prouder than ever to be your Colonel-in-Chief."

A little more than a year was to speed before the Sovereign would again send on active service the soldiers charged with special duties about his person, and would watch them carry forward the traditions of which he was justly proud.

* Cook had carefully trained his men to pronounce the " ah " in " Hurrah " long, but had forgotten to train the band on the same note, so that the chorus was not so effective as he had wished.

CHAPTER III

Does the road wind uphill all the way ?

Yes, to the very end.

Does the day's journey take the whole long day ?

From morn till night, my friend.

CHRISTINA ROSSETTI.

IF, at home in 1914, Irish troubles were thick, and even entangled the Secretary for War and the Chief of the Staff in their meshes, the European sky was wholly serene until there appeared the dark midsummer cloud which, ephemeral as it seemed, was to presage a tempest of blood and fire. On June 29th, the Archduke Franz Ferdinand and his Consort were murdered at Sarajevo. The unhappy Prince had many intimate friends in England, but even by them the political importance of the crime was scarcely appreciated, whilst Sarajevo may have taxed their geographical knowledge. The Gold Stick instructed the Household Cavalry that a Court Ball would be postponed, and they probably thought that so far only would they be affected by an ugly crime which could scarcely have any repercussion in this country. But within a week, Austria was seen to level a pistol at Serbia, and Germany, with murder in her mind, was to lay her powerful finger on the trigger. And if the firearm were for the moment levelled at a petty State, it was intended that the bullet should eventually pierce the heart of Britain. "*C'est le ton qui fait la musique*," and a note of hate was quickly and accurately struck in a favourite German mouthpiece: "We have taken the field against Russia and France, but at bottom it is England we are fighting everywhere.

We must prove to Russia the superiority of our culture and of our military might. We must force France on to her knees until she chokes. It is not yet time to offer terms. But between Russia and Germany there is no insoluble problem. France, too, fights chiefly for honour's sake. It is from England we must wring the uttermost price for this gigantic struggle, however dearly others may have to pay for the help they have given her." *

If ever the archives of Europe give to the light of day their secrets, the full and true story, with all its intrigues and complexities, may be told of how the great trial of strength was forced upon us, but when the British Sovereign's final appeal for peace was nobly made and insolently flung back, placid, peace-loving England, whose honour and freedom were at stake, must fling herself into a fearful struggle, with little thought of its duration, and with no count of its cost.

For some days before the Foreign Secretary disclosed to an excited House of Commons the ultimatum which had been sent to Germany the Household Cavalry Barracks were infected with the fear that the Government would decline to be embroiled in European warfare. This fear, on August 4th, gave place to a new anxiety. Under the Haldane mobilisation scheme the Expeditionary Force—under Field-Marshal Sir John French—would only include a composite regiment, and three-quarters of the three regiments might have no share in the great adventure. For, it was gloomily argued, if the campaign were to be sharp and short—as politicians and financiers confidently and comfortably predicted—there would be no call even for the drafts which were at once warned for duty. All the more enviable, and therefore

* *Hamburger Nachrichten.*

30 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

envied, were the three service squadrons * immediately bent on exchanging peace equipment for war kit, the Blues, moreover, encamping on Cambridge Green, which gave a sharp flavour of reality to initial proceedings.

The War, it was felt, must be a very serious matter to disturb the sacrosanctity of Regent's Park, and to give over to military requirements a spot so favoured by leisured persons. Reality, on this occasion a little bewildering, was further to be found in a grim lecture given by Surgeon Lieut.-Colonel Pares ; his subject was " Field Dressings and what to do with Wounds," and his audience, like other British soldiers, thought it an unnecessary stretch of imagination to discuss so grisly a subject until it was painfully forced home upon them. The serving of ball ammunition to the Guard was a more exhilarating

* LIEUT.-COLONEL COOK, First Life Guards, in command of Composite Regiment.

MAJOR TROTTER, Second Life Guards, Second-in-Command.

1ST. LIFE GUARDS.

MAJOR LORD JOHN CAVENDISH.
CAPTAIN HON. EDWARD WYNDHAM.
LIEUTENANT HON. EVERARD WYNDHAM.
J. BUTLER.
A. L. SMITH.

2ND. LIFE GUARDS.

MAJOR THE HON. H. DAWNAY.
CAPTAIN PENN.
LIEUTENANT SIR A. SINCLAIR.
A. BETHELL.
J. SPEED.
E. WALLACE.
A. MURRAY SMITH (Machine Gun).

ROYAL HORSE GUARDS.

VISCOUNT CRICHTON.	LIEUTENANT MARQUIS OF TITCHFIELD.
CAPTAIN BOULBY.	LIEUTENANT WEMYSS.
LIEUTENANT TURNER.	LIEUTENANT HEATH.

Adjutant, CAPTAIN MUNDY.
Signalling Officer, LIEUTENANT ASTOR.
Medical Officer, MAJOR COWIE.
Veterinary Officer, CAPTAIN REES-MOGG.

Sq.-CORPORAL-MAJOR BROWN, 1st Life Guards.
Sq.-CORPORAL-MAJOR IMBER, 2nd Life Guards.
Sq.-CORPORAL-MAJOR LARTER, Royal Horse Guards.

exercise, and increasingly interesting when it was explained that any one failing to answer a challenge would be fired on. The nett result of this caution was a succession of "Friends" vociferated at all entrances to the park, without any chance being given to a sentry to challenge, let alone to fire.

On August 14th it was discreetly announced that on the morrow the three squadrons would rendezvous to go overseas, that Queen Alexandra would come to Regent's Park to see the Blues, and Queen Mary would post herself in Hyde Park to greet the First Life Guards,* and that Colonel Cook had already been received by the King and Queen and had been permitted to lodge the Standards in Buckingham Palace. Officially no intimation was given of the departure of units, and there were pungent and pathetic comments as to denying "send-offs" and good-byes; only when it was suddenly known that the Expeditionary Force had landed in France without a single mishap was the War Office preference of safety to sentiment considered to be justified. But on Cambridge Green a little group of close friends of the Regiment heard the simple words of farewell which Queen Alexandra—than whom the Regiment had known no better friend—spoke to Crichton, surely with little thought that they were the last words he would hear from her lips. From Hyde Park came the First Life Guards, and from Windsor Dawnay brought his Squadron, from which a fortnight later he was to be wrenched to fill an important post on the General Staff and to be replaced by Captain Gurney.

* The Queen, who was accompanied by Princess Mary, returned to Hyde Park so as to see the Blues pass through also. Crichton—who had been in the suite of the Duke and Duchess of Cornwall for the Colonial tour and equerry to the King when Prince of Wales—was summoned to the Royal Carriage to be bidden God-speed for himself and his Squadron.

Hugh Dawnay must have a word to himself. In 1911 a vacancy for a Squadron Leader occurred in the Second Life Guards, and in high military quarters it was suggested that Dawnay should be translated from the Rifle Brigade to fill it. Some little regimental hesitation was not unnatural. So far the Household Cavalry and Staff College had been infrequently mated, though Wyndham and Howard Vyse* were just then successful candidates for the seat of learning. Would Dawnay's infantry training, reinforced by his recent course at Camberley, fit him, however keen and efficient he might be, for a cavalry regiment of special character? This was the question which rose to many lips, but Dawnay came, and it was quickly seen that a man had been matched with an opportunity. If it was true—and he said so—that he learnt much from his regiment, it is unquestionable that the regiment learnt very many things from him. And when his great chance came, he preferred to take it in the part of a regimental officer; all invitations to join any staff were rejected, if not resented, and it was only a peremptory order, issued on the eve of battle, which caused him to turn aside from the men who believed implicitly in him, and to repair—as it turned out for a few weeks only—to the Headquarters of the First Army Corps. "I consider Dawnay perhaps the best officer I have ever known," wrote a well-known senior officer, "because he had that rare mind which could devote itself equally keenly to the training of recruits, to the domestic troubles of the trooper, to a tactical scheme, or to a European strategical problem."

* Howard Vyse, who later commanded the Blues, was on the outbreak of war, according to plan, made Brigade Major to the Fifth Cavalry Brigade, and subsequently held important command in Palestine.

With the first streak of dawn on the 16th the Regiment steamed from Southampton for Havre, there to receive a rapturous reception and to remain for two days at Point D Camp, and thence to entrain for the point designated as the Front.

It had been decided by the British Cabinet that the Expeditionary Force should concentrate about Amiens, but happenings on the Belgian frontier in the early days of August impelled Joffre to ask that its rendezvous should be fixed farther forward at Maubeuge. French Staff Officers were sent over to London to press this plan, and a conference took place at the War Office on August 12th, when Kitchener protested strongly against the concentration so far forward; nothing, he urged, could be worse for the *moral* of our troops than that the result of their first meeting for over fifty years with a European enemy should be a compulsory retirement, which seemed the too likely sequel to detraining at so advanced a point. He gave his reasons for his belief that the German Army would penetrate Belgium north of the Meuse, but he was only met with a polite but positive reminder that the plan propounded was the outcome of long and close study of local strategical conditions, and by the assurance—which Sir John French endorsed—that our troops would be in no danger. Kitchener was unconvinced, but felt that he could not oppose such a combination of experts, nor force his opinion on soldiers who had devoted themselves to a study of the West, while his own attention had been so largely absorbed in the East. He yielded the point with the reservation that he must secure the consent of the Prime Minister. Mr. Asquith very naturally declined to overrule the experts, and so began and ended any War Office responsibility for a rendezvous which resulted in the heroic retreat from Mons.

H.C.

D

Nothing could have been finer than the reception of the B.E.F. by the civilian population of France and Belgium in 1914. The British troops were regarded as the potential saviours of those countries, who thought rather of Britain's immense wealth than of the minute size of her army; now also was the first mutual opportunity of celebrating the *Entente*, on which both nations had been taught to found their faith.

The troops, therefore, were "fêted" on landing, and during the first months of the War were received with open arms in chateau and cottage alike. Food, wine and kindness of every description were showered upon them, and the best accommodation was theirs. The pre-war soldier, too, having plied his trade in many lands, had acquired the art of adapting himself to his surroundings and of endearing himself to those amongst whom he lived. France resounded with his songs and laughter. If eager in love, after the fashion of his kind, he was, for the most part, courtesy itself to the women of France. Here was a type that the French appreciated, a type that could sing and laugh on its way to almost certain death.

The War dragged on. France was almost exhausted in the struggle. The women and elder men, with all the anxiety of neglected crops and depleted purses, those they held dear in direst danger, grew unutterably weary of it all. It was hardly surprising that they should regard not quite so favourably the ever widening stream of khaki that poured through their villages. Any army, however well disciplined, would prove a trial after the first novelty of its presence had worn off. Troops descend suddenly on a village. Billets must be available at once, stabling, beds for officers, all demanded by people whose tempers are frayed by a day's journey. The soldiers pour in, dirty, careless (from a woman's point of view) in their habits. It was "Madame, this," and "Madame, that,"

and "Madame, *tout-de-suite*." There were, too, in the New Armies, men of all kinds, hastily recruited, hastily trained, men who, many of them, would have been carefully weeded out of the Regular Army. Petty thefts would occur, a chicken, boards from a fence, a few potatoes, and, as was, and always will be, inevitable, there were French girls "in trouble." There was, too, the unfortunate tendency of the British newcomer—of which the regular quickly cured himself—to regard all foreigners as half witted and wholly incompetent, so it was not surprising that in the flux of time British-speaking troops, however profitable, were endured rather than enthused over. But the diaries—and the memories—of the Household Cavalry would seem to be charged only with the many pleasant billets which they occupied, and the friendly terms upon which they went in and out among the inhabitants.

The Squadron at the end of a long march would enter the village allotted to it and be duly depressed by the atmosphere. Hardly a native would appear in the streets, the farmers would surrender only their leakiest outhouses, and in response to every request the farmer's wife would reply: "*Il n'y en a plus*." The estaminets would seem to be the very sorriest pothouses, and the women permanently soured by the war years.

On perhaps the second day of the stay a thaw would set in. Madame early in the morning would perhaps offer "*une jatte de café*" to a sleepy-eyed trooper; Monsieur, bedding down his beasts at eventide, would fork out a truss or two of straw for the men in his outhouse. There would be but little grace in the manner of giving, but it was a commencement. Before a week had run, the village would have laid down its arms. Every farm kitchen would be filled at supper-time, every estaminet would be a Savoy in miniature. *M. le sergent* would be in

36 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

possession of the spare bed, *MM. les caporaux* would be accommodated in the quarters of the absent farm hands, while *MM. les soldats* had their being in the bakehouse. There was one village even where it was popularly believed that our names were entered on the electoral roll, although no election furnished an opportunity of putting the theory to the test.

One is bold enough to believe that these happy conditions were a tribute to the training and discipline of the Old Army, and especially a vindication of the care evinced in maintaining, even during the War, the moral and standard of men recruited for the Household Cavalry. Here is a flattering proposal which had to be set aside :

Tourneppe, le 5 *Feurier*, 1919.

MONSIEUR,

Les soussignés de la commune de Tourneppe, se permettent de solliciter de votre haute bienveillance, à ce que la compagnie de l'armée Anglaise, dénommée " First Life Guards " puisse retourner le plus tôt possible, dans cette localité.

Grace au séjour de cette compagnie dans notre village, la population entiere a été débarassée de nombreux pillages nocturnes, qui se sont produits à plusieurs reprises auparavant. De plus, les habitations au nord du territoire français se trouvent entierement démolies et par conséquent, les soldats y sont exposés aux intempéries de la rude saison. Par contre notre localité qui, au point de vue démolition, n'a pas souffert de la guerre, les habitants ont réservé jusqu'ici toutes les places confortables dont les soldats anglais ont disposés dans le passé.

Esperant, Monsieur, que bonne suite sera réservée à cette demande nous vous prions d'agréer, l'assurance de notre consideration très distinguée.

(Sd.) WILLEM DEMOL.
AUG. JANNSENS.
JOSEPH PEETROONS.
BT. MOSSELMANS.

Monsieur BUTLER,
Général de l'armée Britannique
à Huyssinghem.

Gezien voor echtverklaring de vier vorenstaande handteekens.

Dworp, 5 *Februari*, 1919.

Vr de Burgemeester,

B. HANSSENS.

The "Composites" de-trained in the dark on the 19th at Haumont, watered and fed the horses in the old market-place, and in the morning marched ten miles to Dimont, to find the headquarters of the Fourth Cavalry Brigade,* of which it was now a component part. The Brigade—commanded by the Hon. C. E. Bingham, who had served in the Second, and commanded the First Life Guards—consisted of the Composite Regiment, the Sixth Dragoon Guards, the Third Hussars, and the Fourth Signal Troop. The First Cavalry Brigade, consisting of the Second and Fifth Dragoon Guards and Eleventh Hussars, were under General Briggs; General de Lisle had charge of the Fourth Dragoon Guards, the Ninth Lancers and the Eighteenth Hussars; the Fourth Hussars, Fifth Lancers and Sixteenth Lancers being assigned to General Gough.

Sir Philip Chetwode had a so-called supernumerary Fifth Cavalry Brigade, composed of the Scots Greys, Twelfth Lancers and Twentieth Hussars. Such was the superb, if numerically small, body of mounted troops which General Allenby, in supreme command, was to render immortal in military history.

The news—or such as could be gleaned—was cheerful, so far as it went, and the situation, as explained to the men, satisfied their not very exacting enquiries. The British Force was shuffling up into its allotted place in a pear-shaped area between Maubeuge and Le Cateau; the Fourth Division was being sent out sooner than expected; Sir John French was said to be pleased with

* Captain the Hon. George Monckton-Arundell, First Life Guards, who later commanded the Life Guards, First and Second, was posted for duty with the Brigade. When the Composite Regiment broke up he was appointed Staff Captain, and was afterwards transferred to the Second Cavalry Division as D.A.Q.M.G.

38 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

all he heard from the French Generalissimo, and with his own post on the left of the contemplated advance ; the Flying Corps had carried out its first reconnaissance without observing any large bodies of hostile troops. For the Regiment itself, the billets were comfortable, the horses * had stood the journey well, and there was some good grazing for them, and an agreeable sense of war conditions was imparted by the arrival of interpreters ; the two attached to the Household Cavalry having, apparently, great music-hall possibilities.

One of these functionaries, who was at once dubbed " Tired Tim," was six feet three in height and as thin as a rail ; his companion was a short man of quite amazing corpulence. " Tired Tim " was given a horse with which he was soon on strained and unequal terms, and which at the earliest opportunity he quite deliberately lost. He was then accommodated with a bicycle on which he rode away and was not seen again. His companion, " Weary Willie," whose contours put riding out of the question, stumped stolidly along, got a lift wherever and whenever he could, and remained faithful to the Composite Regiment until his well-earned promotion took him elsewhere.

The British Commander-in-Chief's concentration was practically complete on the 20th, the day on which the German Army entered Brussels and got within range of Namur, the Belgian Army retired to Antwerp and the French Army heard Joffre's mandate for the prospective advance. The ground on which the British Army stood

* The previous night a troop horse got cast in the slippery truck, and the stable guard failed by shouting to get the train stopped. He proceeded to signal with a flag, and every one who had a flag joined in until the train presented a highly festive appearance. The engine-driver, however, was flag-blind, and drove steadily on until Surgeon-Major Cowie climbed on to the roof of his carriage and crawled along to drop down into the engine, arrest its progress, and rescue the horse.

had again and again been trodden by British troops, and name after name of places can be found in the records of Life Guards and Blues. The orders issued that evening from G.H.Q. would, if carried out, have resulted three days later in the Army being aligned on a front roughly facing north-east—with the Cavalry Division (except the Fifth Brigade) on the left. On the morning of the 21st, the Cavalry, after an early march, had patrols in sight of—though not in touch with—German mounted parties. At dawn on the 22nd, a patrol of the Fourth Dragoon Guards found a German picket on the road to Soignies, and had the privilege of firing the first shot of the War. The previous afternoon the Cavalry had been told to close the lines between the French left and Mons, while just before midnight there came an order prefaced by the caustic comment: "The information supplied by the mounted troops would appear to be exaggerated, and that only the enemy's mounted troops with considerable Jaeger Battalions were in the neighbourhood." The Cavalry Divisional Commander, General Allenby,* had been bidden to take post behind the left of the Second Corps in the area Thulin-Quiévrain-Baisieux, and on no account to get seriously engaged until the Commander-in-Chief could adequately support him. On the 22nd, owing to a German threat round about Binche, Allenby's move westward was put off from noon until 4 p.m., and after a trying ride over fourteen miles of cobbled streets, he reached his billets in Elouges and Baisieux after midnight, when he found himself on the left of the Army. The latter place was to be the Household Cavalry's resting-place for what was left of the night; the evening before they had been entertained at Harveng, and to Turner and his troop of Blues on out-

* In 1920 Field-Marshal Viscount Allenby succeeded Lord Grenfell in the Colonelcy of First Life Guards.

post along the line of the Conde Mons Canal came the first experience of catching a spy *en flagrant délit*. The mayor of the village hard by, an amicable miller, had been a little too effusive in his profession of great partiality to the British, which did not, however, prevent the British from noticing that his blinds were flapping. As the night was dead calm, this behaviour seemed rather odd ; but what was odder still, after dark there was an active twinkling of lights in the windows. A French officer was consulted, a term was immediately imposed to the miller's activities, and the miller himself was shot at dawn, too late, however, for the Blues to say, " I told you so," to the French troops, who gave very short shrift.

Late in the afternoon of the 22nd the Commander-in-Chief forwarded his precise view of the situation as he saw it through the rose-coloured spectacles which he so often wore. The day before he had telegraphed that he knew the situation thoroughly and regarded it as " quite favourable to us." He now added to his appreciation of Joffre's projected offensive through the Ardennes that when the Third and Fourth French Armies should get into line, the Fifth Army and the British Forces would join in a general advance northwards ; that the Germans were not pressing their attack between Charleroi and Namur, that his own concentration was complete ; that the German Cavalry,* with their usual Jaeger support, had been hammering at Gough and Chetwode ; that the spirit and dash of his own Cavalry was splendid ; that he had strictly enjoined Allenby to save and nurse them to the utmost, and finally, " all quiet to-night."

" Quiet " is, of course, a relative term, but at least it

* The German Cavalry soldier rides fairly well, but never saves his horse ; the patrols take wide turns over the country and appear to be enterprising, but are fairly easily captured. The Germans do not like our Cavalry. (Sir John to Kitchener.)

can be said that it was the last "quiet" which the British Expeditionary Force was to enjoy for some time.

Twenty-four hours later, as the Angelus rang out from the church tower at Mons, the military retreat from Mons was to begin and the first pitiable crowd of refugees was to be driven southward. Germany's great opportunity had arrived ; true, she had failed to lock up Sir John and his Division under the Maubeuge Forts, but they could scarcely, she thought, escape the spiked embrace with which she was lurching forward to encircle them. Sir John believed and wrote that the Emperor "in his rancour and hate had really risked weakness in other parts of the field in order to finish off the British Force." The miniature British Army was trained to the hour and a complete agnostic with respect to anything like defeat ; every other physical advantage seemed to lodge with the invaders of France and Belgium. The weather was ideal for putting into practice their military theories evolved in long years of European peace. The German troops were fresh from the manœuvres which had preceded the declaration of war. If war be taken as the final examination for all soldiers, three invaluable weeks had been spent in cramming for the ordeal. The violation of Belgian neutrality had secured an initiative which washed out all French frontier schemes of defence, and was only robbed of its grossly immoral success by the unexpected resistance of the Belgian Army. The roads were dry and firm, so that guns could quickly press home every advantage scored by the infantry ; the rivers and streams were low, so that the destruction of bridges was not sufficient to hold up an advance ; sunshine and warm nights kept the advancing troops in good health, while their spirits were stimulated by definite promises of speedy and complete victory, and by the circulation of agreeable—if apocryphal—stories, that " 30,000 English

have been surrounded," or again, that "the English are reported as annihilated."

With the first streak of dawn on the 24th * the Cavalry were on the move, but Allenby's withdrawal to some distance was checked by a request from the Commander of the Fifth Division to cover his left flank. A squadron of the Ninth Lancers tiptoed into Thulin and exchanged a few blows with the enemy ; De Lisle stood astride the road from Thulin to Elouges ; Briggs was on the railway to its left ; Gough was on his left rear half a mile south-east of Quiévrain ; Bingham took post at Sebourg, five miles further south, and bade Cook reconnoitre round Jeulam and Preseau, and then entrench at Saultain and be on the lookout for a more than likely night attack. The attack, however, did not come till 4.30 on the following morning, when the hastily prepared position was held for a couple of hours—Murray Smith's maxims proving themselves admirably effective—until evacuation was ordered for the regiment to take its part in what proved to be Allenby's prolonged rearguard action.

Gurney had to bring up the rear of the other two squadrons and, timing himself a little too generously, found himself sharing Saultain with some Germans, to whom he delivered a few parting shots and then trotted off, under sharp rifle fire, at a quicker pace than the drill book lays down—to Courgies ; here Cook received a message from the Brigadier to return through Courgies and join the Brigade south of it at Artres. In pursuance of this order the advance party under Euan Wallace was opening a gate at a level crossing just outside the village when Germans in ambush opened fire from a turnip field and from the windows of some little houses. One horse

* Baisieux, August 23rd. Left billets 5.40 p.m., moved to Saultain. Bethell's troop took German Officers prisoners, and reported many prisoners killed on canal line. (Colonel Cook's diary.)

was shot, but the Troop Corporal quickly hoisted the rider on to his own saddle for the cross-country gallop which had to be taken to Preseau, and which was interrupted for some of the Life Guards to dismount and shoot down a taube.

At Préseau was the Brigade, and between Préseau and Solesmes the Brigade came under some well-aimed shell fire, which, however, did little damage. Bingham called a halt at Solesmes, just when the weather broke, and the rain began to pelt on the men as they dismounted to stretch their legs and ease their horses. Twenty minutes later came a sharp order to mount, draw swords, and gallop through the little town on to a hill where a Uhlan regiment had been located. But the swords had to be sheathed bloodless, for the Uhlans had gone, and hard by were some British Infantry feverishly digging themselves in. The gallop, however, was continued, to be checked at Viesly, through which the Eleventh Brigade was streaming; the gallant Brigadier, Hunter Weston, marching on foot with the rearguard. The word "*billet*" is now in every one's mouth, and after an hour's wait in the main street and a rationed meal, reinforced by what the *estaminet* could—and gladly did—produce, a midnight move was made to Beaumont, six miles off, the head of the German Force entering Viesly a few minutes after the rear party of the Second Life Guards trailed out of it.

"Retirement continued to-day without serious hindrance from the enemy. Halting to-night on lines Landrecies, Le Cateau, Cambrai. To-morrow moving towards Peronne. Our troops are convinced of their superiority and are unwilling to retire further." This was the gist of the Commander-in-Chief's report on the 25th, and agreeably with his wish to cover his advanced base and protect his lines of communication, the Second Corps

44 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

was directed to billet about Prémont and Beauvais, and the Fourth Division at Le Catelet.

But on August 26th was fought the fight which stands to the undying honour of Smith Dorrien and his Corps ; it was the function of the Household Cavalry Regiment to support the Fourth Division through the day, and cover its retreat at night. The Division had only landed in France thirty hours earlier, and General Snow had hurried it through scorching heat and rain to Solesmes, there to assist the Second Corps in its proposed retreat. By 5 a.m. on the 26th Snow had brought his infantry into their allotted place, when a message reached him that Smith Dorrien had decided to stand fast and begged that he would conform. The request was, indeed, an order, for both Allenby and Snow had perforce to come under Smith Dorrien's control, and their wearied men must shake off fatigue and stand the shock of what the enemy hoped would be a pulverising blow.

The Regiment rested for precisely ten minutes at Beaumont, when they had to saddle up again, and at 3 a.m. betake themselves to Ligny, about six miles off. Here they were able to appreciate at first hand something of Smith Dorrien's rapid preparations—and cool determination—to stem an onrush which, without his interposition, might have swept on to the heart of Paris or swept the British force into the sea. Both Smith Dorrien and Allenby were eagerly looking for the promised help of General Sordet's mounted men, but through the burden and heat of the day they must look in vain.

Entreaties were sent to the Cavalry leader by telegram and telephone, by car and cycle and mounted courier. Among others, Euan Wallace took a small patrol to try and find the French General and soon trod on the tail of his force, who seemed to be marching away from the sound of the guns. An hour's hard riding brought him

to Sordet's Chief of Staff, who in reply to a very urgent message from a very heated messenger, said that he was unable to contravene his orders, that his horses were played out, and the utmost he could do was to give his telegraphic address for further communications.

On this memorable August 26th, from 5 a.m., for twelve hours the Fourth Division stood up to give at least as much as it got, and it was not until evening began to fall that Snow, his task performed, could retire with, or rather a little after, the Second Corps. The timely and welcome appearance of Sordet on his left rear implied that he need not be nervous as to the Division's western flank; Bingham, near Salvigny, was fully instructed to cover his retreat, and cover it he effectively did through a long straggling, drizzling, depressing night march, at the pace of a snail over roads encumbered with overturned transport, abandoned material, and odd remnants of brigades and battalions. To the Cavalry it would be poignant to see the Infantry stumbling painfully along, many without rifles or equipment, half dead with hunger and weariness, and only sufficiently animate to be sure that in time, if not in their time, the Briton would have the Boche under his heel. Neither Cavalry nor Infantry knew—or would know for many a month—the strategic value of the day's work, and that the very fact of their being able to retire to plan was proof that the enemy's sinister plan had been frustrated. With daylight on the 27th, the Infantry first trickled and then poured into St. Quentin, whence Sir John a few hours earlier had rather hurriedly shifted his headquarters to Noyon. It was immediately needful to screen the north of the town, and this duty fell to Gough, who at 4 a.m. was at Homblieres; Cook with his rearguard consisting of his own regiment, the Sixth Dragoon Guards, who had six officers wounded, and six troops of the Third Hussars, had been sharply

engaged as he reached Vendhulie, half an hour later. He sent Speed and Bethell with their troops on to a hill north of the village with a couple of guns and maxims to forestall the designs of some German Cavalry on Snow's latter troops, who were making their way to a position near Havrincourt. At noon, Bingham was ordered to move, keeping in touch with Sordet, to Le Minet,* which was reached in the late afternoon, and where a halt just sufficed to feed and water the horses.

At dusk, Allenby came to the Brigade, and he explained the situation as far as he knew it. He admitted that a good deal rested on rumour, and that each rumour was less comfortable than the last. The Germans were reported to be hard on our heels, and in great strength; the French Infantry on the left was said to have been wiped out. It was evident that the retreat must continue at once, and that there was no question of even a brief rest; there was likely to be a belly-full of fighting, and the words "cutting one's way through" were freely used, especially as the Regiment—less the Second Life Guards Squadron, detailed for rearguard—was to be advance guard to the Division. The task of the Regiment, which was as much a reconnaissance as an advance guard, was no easy one. There was no clear information of where the Germans might be, maps were unavailable, and for the purpose unreliable, the night was of inky darkness, the country was flat and almost featureless, and the question to be answered was whether the Germans had actually pierced the Allied Line. The little town of Nesle was somewhere near, and somewhere beyond Nesle flowed the Somme. It was evident, therefore, that at all costs the enemy must be prevented from crossing the first natural

* At Le Minet I was sent with my troop to block the two roads leading to Peronne, while Speed took a patrol to see if any enemy were in Peronne. (Diary of Lieutenant Bethell.)

barrier, in the line of retreat behind which the English might shelter. The march was led by Colonel Vaughan, G.S.O. 1 to the Division, who travelled with the Staff Officers in a car and picked out the path with a torch. It was arranged that if a red light were shown on the car, it would mean a barricade, and the two leading squadrons would dismount and attack it. Progress—or to be more accurate, retrogress—was very slow, and the first obstacle encountered was a string of private motors packed with French wounded. In the dull glow of the lamps their peace-time uniforms, torn and battle-soiled, looked curiously incongruous. No one worried the wounded with questions about the enemy; at the moment no one seemed much to care. The men slept in their saddles, and were wakened at intervals by their neighbours; the horses slouched along mechanically on the heels of other horses. When the convoy of wounded had drawn clear, the Brigade got mixed up in the dark, narrow roads, and Hussars, Household Cavalry and Carabineers rode together in dreary fellowship. After several hours of this blind searching, the order came for a halt; some farm buildings were at hand, but the men rolled off their horses and slept in sheer exhaustion under them. Three officers of the Blues, however, thought that a room would be comfortable, and asked for hospitality from a singularly hideous old hag, whose companion was a lanky, half-witted boy. "Volley" Heath, whose spirit was wonderfully willing, but whose flesh was very weak, and who had been supported on his horse by his Corporal for the last six hours, was too overtired to fall asleep. While trying to doze he became conscious that the youth was stealthily approaching him with a long knife, while the old woman was encouraging him with pious murmurs, "Le bon Dieu nous aidera." His cry awoke his companions, and it transpired on inquiry that the couple,

who knew nothing of khaki, had mistaken them for Boches, and thought they would be rendering France excellent service by gouging out their eyes.

After its all-night duty as rearguard, which included guarding all the entrances to Le Minet until the Division was moved off, the Second Life Guards Squadron was ordered at 2 a.m. on the 28th to hold the high ground above Bethancourt to protect the bivouac round Rouy. If the Division was excusably drowsy, it is not surprising that Gurney's chief work during the hours before dawn was to prevent his men from succumbing to sleep in sheer exhaustion until they were relieved at eight o'clock on the morning of the 28th, and ordered to rejoin the Regiment. An off-saddling in the fields near Rouy, the slaughter of a hecatomb of available poultry, a square meal, the prospect of a sound sleep, and the realisation of a couple hours of it and, above all, the news that the Allied Line was unbroken, combined to produce a far more cheerful outlook, which was scarcely damped by a mid-day order to saddle up, and the rumour that the enemy, advancing in motor-buses, was scarcely two miles away.

The buses, with their inmates, proved to be mythical, and a quiet march southwards to Cressy ended in fairly comfortable billets at Moyencourt, a welcome mail, a good night's rest, and an opportunity the next morning of seeing how sorry was the condition and how sore the backs of the horses. An afternoon skirmish on the 29th between the Uhlans and the Second Life Guards (about Manicourt, where the Squadron was holding some bridges) showed up the even worse plight of the German horses, who may have been thankful for the British bullets which gave them their *coup de grâce*. At the evening bivouac at Dives the Germans were reported—this time a little more accurately—to be hard by, and to

have come into action with a battery just as the Second Life Guards Squadron moved away from the Canal.

The general duty assigned to Allenby for the 30th was to cover the left of the retirement towards Compiègne ; on the 31st he was asked to protect the northern flank of the movement—the Third Corps, being the north column, marching down the right bank of the Oise, his billeting area to be Rivecourt, Bazicourt, Sarron. . . . Sunday, the 30th, dawned a cloudless day, and developed into one of intense heat, which rendered very grateful and comforting the bivouac in the shady grounds of a chateau about a mile south of Compiègne, the more so as the Regiment, for the first time since the fighting started, got touch with their transport. Rumour had it that the Cavalry would halt for two or three days to refit, and pleasant plans were made for a long overdue wash. Any ablutions, however, which were not performed that night had to be indefinitely postponed, for early the next morning Bingham had to hurry his men back through Compiègne and to be busy through the day reconnoitring the strength and position of the German advance guards. His own Regiment, the Second Life Guards, whom he had detailed as rearguard for the evening retirement, found the Uhlan patrols inclined to be aggressive and adhesive. Gurney was thus delayed in getting his men across the bridge at Oise, which the Engineers were to blow up as soon as the last trooper had crossed over.

How little did the troops, scorched with heat, smothered with dust, and holding a brutal enemy at bay, know of the winged words which were passing that day between the Commander-in-Chief, from his headquarters at Noyon, and the Cabinet in Downing Street. Sir John had telegraphed that such was the fatigue and disarray of his troops that he had determined to retreat

H.C.

E

by a series of eight marches to a shelter behind the Seine, where he could refit and rearrange, with its reinforcements, his army. The Cabinet agreed with the French President and Joffre that to break away from the line altogether would both frustrate the policy of the Allies and gravely jeopardise the issue of the War.

At 2 a.m. on September 1st Kitchener hurried to Paris, where, in an interview with the Commander-in-Chief, he insisted that the British troops should be so disposed—agreeably with the entreaty of Joffre—as to be ready to take their part in the impending fight, which might well be the decisive battle of the War.*

So far the Household Cavalry had been weary, but unwounded. On more than one occasion they had narrowly missed being badly mauled, but had escaped with scarcely a bruise. Now their long roll of honour was to have its first entry. The morning of September 1st was thick with fog, and the very early breakfast was suddenly disturbed by an outburst of firing. Bullets came whizzing overhead out of the mist, and the roar of guns increased in volume every minute. The Brigade saddled up at once and moved to the sound of the artillery, the Second Life Guards galloping ahead to send in a report, and meeting men galloping back with the ugly report that the Bays had been cut up. It was only later that the true story of the morning encounter, in which is embedded the superb gallantry of "L" Battery, was heard. Apparently the advance guard of a German cavalry division, with three field batteries, had somehow in the darkness got through the line of our Infantry and stumbled on the bivouac of the Fifth Cavalry Brigade

* In the communiqué of the day Lord Kitchener substituted the words "routed enemy" for the expression I had used in my draft. "The enemy is routed," he said, "in what I think will be the decisive battle of the war." (Lord Birkenhead to G. A.)

and “L” Battery R.H.A. The Eleventh Hussars, warned by a patrol, could extricate itself, but in the dawning light the German guns, firing at point-blank, inflicted wholesale slaughter on the horses, killed and wounded many of the cavalrymen, and shot down every one of the gunners, the last survivor continuing to fire until the last round was gone.

So much for the German surprise, the *dénouement*, however, of which was that instead of their capturing two regiments and four guns, which they seemed to have a fine opportunity to do, they got nothing away, and lost their own guns with a large percentage of their mounted men. Meanwhile, Bingham aligned his Brigade along the Second Life Guards Squadron, which had taken up a position above the village of Néry, and awaited the German attack. The Blues stood in a rich clover field and watched the German machine guns mow a path across their front, the clover falling as though cut by some giant scythe. Not 20 yards ahead there swept a cyclone of bullets, and had the Germans not happened to be firing at fixed targets, the Squadron must have suffered the fate of the clover. Heath was now sent forward with his troops on to some ground partly hidden by a haystack, where he espied a considerable party of the enemy and, without more ado, charged them.* They turned and ran, whereupon he dismounted and opened fire. The enemy, however, soon realised the numerical weakness of the offensive, and returned to counter-attack. Heath was obliged to fall back, and in getting away lost several horses and five men wounded. He himself was hit in the foot and leg, and unable for a moment to mount; and while one of his men was trying to hoist him on to his horse he was hit again, this time in

* For an act of bravery on this occasion, Trooper Jupp was selected to receive the Russian Cross of the Order of St. George.

the head, and had to be left on the ground for a while until, the Germans having again been pushed away, he was brought in and sent to hospital, where a few days later he died.

Late in the afternoon Bingham came back slowly through Rully, and billeted at Fourchest, where an excellent farm provided accommodation for men, shelter for horses, a delectable supply of farm produce, and a very admirable cellar of *vin ordinaire*.

But there was to be little or no sleep, as at 10 o'clock came the "turn out" to precede an all-night session on the ridge at Montepilloy, with an unfortunate but innocuous incident of an interchange of shots between two of Gurney's patrols. At dawn on the 2nd John Cavendish went forward with his squadron to reconnoitre four miles to the north, and, to Cook's anxiety, had not returned when with noon came the order to withdraw from the ridge. The route of the other two squadrons that afternoon was through the forest of Armenonville to Le Mesnil Anelot, where, on a beautiful night, a bivouac was preferable to a stuffy billet, where some low-flying enemy aircraft caused an awkward stampede of horses, and where, *Laus Deo*, there was found a copious mail.

A fifteen-mile march early the next morning brought the two Squadrons—very uneasy at the disappearance of the First Life Guards, and rather fretful over the continued retreat—to Gournay-sur-Marne.

Here, during a long afternoon halt, there was a crop of rumours which furnished material for eager talk. Paris was now so close that an absolute halt, or an entrance into it, seemed the only alternative. There was something to be said for both, but, better still, would not Paris best be defended by an attack? A French Staff Officer in passing had murmured some-

thing about "déclencher une offensive." The British casualties were known to be heavy, but the German losses were said to be staggering; anyhow, the superiority of the British soldier had been established, and he was certainly being reinforced. Then there was an undefined idea that the enemy made some blunder, and it might well be the precise moment to hit him hard. After days of depression, optimism was beginning to reassert itself. More especially the First Life Guards Squadron now turned up, and had evidently given a capital account of itself with a body of enemy cavalry, though Butler had been wounded and was missing.* There was no surprise when an almost unthinkable order to go fifteen miles back was cancelled almost before it was delivered, and there was substituted for it a short move to Ferme la Buissant, the residence of Monsieur Menier, the wealthy "chocolate king"!

No better quarters could have been found for the day's rest on the 4th, which was accorded. Horses were groomed, their ailments attended to, letters were written, beards removed, bodies washed, the balance of the time being allotted to much-needed sleep. It was indeed a happy day, and would have been happier still if it had been officially known that it was the last day of the historic retirement.

On this afternoon † two British Staff Officers received from General Franchet d'Esperey the plan of Joffre's

* Butler, wounded in the chest, was found a few days later at a farm, where he had been left in charge of the occupants and forgotten by the Germans in their precipitate retreat.

† "Am informed that Joffre now considers the strategical situation excellent, and has decided to employ all his troops in a vigorous offensive. Joffre considers it very essential you should fully realise that it is most important you should co-operate most vigorously with him. We can fully trust you to use your force to the best advantage in contributing to the success of this movement." (Kitchener to Sir John, September 4th.)

54 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

proposed attack, which was a model of simplicity and clarity. It ran :

1. Advantage must be taken of the risky situation of the German First Army to concentrate against it the efforts of our allied armies on the extreme left. All preparations must be made during the 5th for an attack on September 6th.

2. The following general arrangements are to be carried out by the evening of September 5th.

- (a) All the available forces of the Sixth Army north-east of Meaux are to be ready to cross the Ourcq between Lizy and May-in-Multien, in the general direction of Chateau Thierry. The available portions of the First Cavalry Corps which are close at hand are to be handed over to General Maunoury for this operation.
- (b) The British Army is to establish itself on the line Changis-Coulommiers, facing east, ready to attack in the general direction of Montmirail.
- (c) The Fifth Army will close slightly on its left and take up the general line Courtaçon-Esternay-Sézanne, ready to attack, generally speaking, from south to north. The Second Cavalry Corps will ensure connection between the British Army and the Fifth Army.

By 5 a.m. on the 5th the Regiment, rested and refreshed, was on the road to Rean, where came the cheerful message that the next march would be due east or, in other words, there would be no more retreat ; that night was spent at Monte Farm, a step—if only a step—in the right direction.

To the Cavalry on the 6th—the day when the enemy reached the extreme limit of its advance—was given the normal duty of covering the front and flanks and keeping connections with the French Armies between which the

English were moving. For the moment the Third and Fifth Cavalry Brigades were to act together under Gough, the Cavalry Division being composed of the other three Brigades.

At 3.30 Sir John telegraphed to Allenby to betake himself north-east to the line Choisi-Chevreu, and to cover the right flank. The Household Cavalry Regiment had left its billet in Monte Farm at 5.30 a.m., and had passed its day in scouting, wood-scouring, and listening on the ridge north of Gastin, to the roar of artillery and to an exposition of the situation which Cook gave them—so far as he knew it—with the aid of available maps. The Colonel's careful and lucid statement might have assumed a higher colour had he known that Maunoury had already struck at the German force opposite to him west of the Ourcq, and had opened the battle of the Marne on the result of which hung the fate of the War.

The initial success of the Sixth Army was scarcely known at Sir John's headquarters at Melun that evening, but some scent of it pervaded the special order which he issued at 7 p.m. The order, simply worded, and at the time scarcely noticed, proved itself of historic interest. The great retreat was over. For nearly four years the British Army would stand its ground or advance; it would bend once more, but never break, under Hindenburg's last desperate onslaught, but Haig's recoil in the spring of 1918 only rendered more effective his leap forward in the summer, and the stranglehold he imposed on the enemy in the autumn, upon the very terrain where the first clash of arms occurred. The Commander-in-Chief's order rang clear and rang high:

"After a most trying series of operations, mostly in retirement, which have been rendered necessary by the general strategic plan of the Allied Armies, the British forces stand to-day formed in line with their French comrades, ready to attack the enemy.

" Foiled in their attempt to invest Paris, the Germans have been driven to move in an easterly and south-easterly direction, with the apparent intention of falling in strength on the V French Army. In this operation they are exposing their right flank and their line of communication to an attack from the combined VI French Army and the British forces.

" I call upon the British Army in France to now show the enemy its power, and to push on vigorously to the attack beside the VI French Army. I am sure I shall not call upon them in vain, but that, on the contrary, by another manifestation of the magnificent spirit which they have shown in the past fortnight, they will fall on the enemy's flank with all their strength and in unison with their Allies drive them back."

The story of the first battle of the Marne may be briefly set out. Von Klück, following on the heels of Sir John and De Laurezac, had taken his troops across the river, leaving only one reserve corps to guard his flank and rear north of it.

This Reserve Corps was attacked on September 5th by Maunoury, whose strength von Klück had complacently belittled. That night the German General must bring two corps which were opposite our front back across the Marne to assault Maunoury, a strong detachment of Cavalry being ordered to delay our advance. The particular story of September 6th, 7th and 8th is of a desperate encounter to the west of the Ourcq, in which Maunoury is just able to hold his own with the help of reinforcements rushed out to him by General Gallien from Paris. The British Expeditionary Force, as it advances to the Marne, drives back von Klück's Cavalry and crosses successively the Grand Morin and Petit Morin. Franchet d'Esperey's Fifth Army on Sir John's right makes good progress against von Klück's left wing ; still further to the right General Foch, who has just taken over the Ninth Army, fights as perhaps he alone can fight, against two German Armies trying to pierce the French centre.

On September 8th Sir John drew near to the south bank of the Marne to cross it at an early hour on the 9th, and to cross it in the nick of time.* The day before, so heavy had been von Klück's pressure, that Maunoury had thought it prudent to concert with the Military Governor of Paris measures for a possible retirement on the capital.

But the French General was still putting up a superb fight, and hotly engaging the flank and rear of the enemy's troops, when the sudden appearance of Sir John on the north bank of the river, so unnerved von Klück—who had been badly mauled—that he threw up the sponge and ordered the retirement. Sir John indeed scored a double advantage, for General von Buelow, who was pitting himself against Foch, had to push his second army to the west, to pull von Klück out of his difficulty, and in so doing left a gap in his front between the marshes of St. Gond and Vitry-le-François. Foch leapt at the opportunity, and with his famous dash on the evening of the 9th, transformed what might have been only a local success into a victory which wrecked the first German plan of campaign. That night the Commander-in-Chief could telegraph home: "The enemy have been driven back all along the line. The First and Second Corps have reached a line about eight miles north of the Marne, and to-night the Third Corps crosses at La Ferté."

To revert to the Household Cavalry Regiment. Joffre's instructions to go forward only reached Sir John a little before noon on the 7th, but the Cavalry had started early, Allenby heading east to the Grand Morin. Gough's advance parties hustled and hit the rear of the Germans as they bolted out of Maupesthui, and Bingham, two miles

* To-night British Forces on the Marne, and will make an early move to-morrow. Everywhere the advance has been very energetic, and we are pressing the enemy as hard and continuously as possible. Casualties to-day small, considering the nature of the fighting. (Sir John to Kitchener.)

to the south-east of Choisi, came upon some cavalry, cyclists and guns, and forced them north to be further handled by the Ninth Lancers. John Cavendish during the morning could deal satisfactorily with the same Cavalry rearguard, but the Second Life Guards, when vigorously clearing the dense Bois de Chevin, nearly immolated a party of French Dragoons who, coming up under cover of a hill, were mistaken for the ubiquitous Uhlans. The Dragoons bore the loss of a horse very philosophically, but Gurney, on the far side of the wood, had recourse to a rich vocabulary when bullets intended for the Uhlans whistled over the head of the party he had just posted there. Late in the afternoon Gurney was ordered to reconnoitre the crossing of the Grand Morin. To the report which he sent in no acknowledgment was received, and a hungry night was spent by his squadron in a grass field, a little cherry brandy from an *estaminet* having to do general duty for supper and breakfast. The Blues, on the same errand, also spent a night out, and with the morning were equally full of knowledge of the Grand Morin, and equally empty of material nourishment. Two Squadrons, finding the Brigade on the road to Radais, were content to accept a graceful apology from the Brigadier who had slightly misread his map.

Through September 8th Bingham was to support the First and Second Brigades as they made for the line of the Petit Morin westward to La Traitoire. The Fifth Dragoon Guards, at the head of the Cavalry Division, moved on Savlonniers, driving scattered parties of German horsemen before them and plunging down into the wooded valley of the Petit Morin. The two bridges at Savlonniers were lightly held, but a direct advance on them was forbidden by the enemy's rifle fire. At the western bridge the Second Cavalry Brigade was temporarily foiled by a barricade, and before 9 a.m. both Allenby and

Gough were at a standstill, the enemy's rearguards being too well posted to be dislodged until reinforcements could come up.

The forcing of the passage of the Petit Morin was the day's work of September 8th, and was no easy job. The ground was admirably adapted for rearguard action, the enemy stubbornly defended the positions he had carefully chosen, and caution must have been blended with courage in the orders of the British leaders, as our casualties for the day were under 600 killed and wounded, while those of the retreating enemy were considerably over double that number.

To the Regiment in due course fell part of the duty of covering the Infantry's passage of the Petit Morin, the enemy in front of them retiring under punishment north-east towards Bassevele. Late in the afternoon Bingham, after crossing the river, followed up under a dropping fire to the Bussier-Bassevele line, where he told Cook to billet in a farm on the La Ferté Montmirail road, the billet, however, having to take the form of a wet field as French Dragoons and Infantry had swarmed into the modest rooms which the willing farmer could supply.

Joffre that evening reminded Commanders that the right wing of the German Army was now divided into two groups and that it was of capital importance to defeat its extreme right before it could be reinforced from Maubeuge. He assigned this duty to Maunoury and Sir John, asking the latter to threaten the left and rear of the enemy on the Ourcq.

Sir John instructed his Army to advance at 5 a.m. on the morrow, to attack the enemy rearguards wherever met, and to head northward, the Cavalry keeping careful touch with the French to their right and left as before, more especially associating itself with the Fifth Army on

its right. Allenby ordered the *reveillé* for 2.30 and the march for two hours later.

By 5.30 a.m. the First Cavalry Brigade was in possession of the bridge at Nogent, while the Fourth Brigade had seized that at Lizy, two miles below Chateau Thierry, over which Bingham crossed the Marne without difficulty.

The afternoon was of intense heat, roads were choked with dust, human throats were sanded with thirst. Except for officers' patrols there was little for the Household Cavalry Regiment to do other than to sit in a stubble field and hope that their sadly overdue transport might come up. It was not till after midnight, however, that the expected carts arrived at the billet in Beaurepaire; and equally welcome was Speed with a string of remounts to relieve some of the attenuated and jaded troop horses for whom the War could have nothing to recommend it.

Curiously enough the general feeling when dusk fell on the British line was one of disappointment. It was known that the First and Third Corps had been checked, that ten of the sixteen battalions of the latter were still on the south bank of the river, that the promise held out when at 9 a.m. the Ninth Infantry Brigade had reached the road from Chateau Thierry to Lizy had not been fulfilled, that Maunoury had been urging the imperative necessity of an assault on von Klück's left and rear; there was a rumour of the Governor of Paris, as a last resort, rushing his garrison in taxicabs to the help of their hard-pressed colleagues. All this was a little depressing, and it was not, of course, known that late in the evening Maunoury's hulking enemy was retiring north-eastward and covering his retreat with his heavy guns; that the road from Lizy to Coulombs was a mass of baffled and bewildered Germans; that from Verdun to the Ourcq the enemy had gone about; that Germany's intended knock-

out blow had been expended in the air ; that it behoved the High Command to tell the Kaiser he must forego his proposed residence at Chantilly and must cancel his breakfast in the Champs Elysées * ; and that before morning Sir John would pen a telegram announcing " A general retreat of the enemy towards north-east and east," adding that he was reorganising the Cavalry in two divisions and asking if he might give medals on the spot to a few non-commissioned officers and men who had distinguished themselves in the field.

Sir John timed the advance—or what he might have called the pursuit—for 5 a.m. on the 10th, and before that hour Allenby was well on the move, Euan Wallace having steered Bingham in the dark to the divisional point of concentration. For the march which traversed Domtin, Etrepil, Épiaux to Les Vallées, Gurney furnished the Brigade's advance guard, and could report about noon that Briggs had caught sight of a bulky rearguard moving away from La Croix. Two hours later Allenby's batteries opened fire on the convoy of 500 waggons, and one of Conneau's cavalry divisions—supported by infantry in motor lorries—came up from somewhere east of Le Tilly and captured the convoy together with a large armful of combatants. A long and noisy day's work—cheered by marks of a disorganised flight and by the knowledge that the Cavalry had taken 300 out of the 1,800 prisoners which constituted the day's haul—had its close for the Regiment in the beautifully situated village of La Croix, when, in the wonted absence of transport, a bevy of amateur cooks did what they could with any material to hand.

Joffre's special instructions for the 11th imposed on

* The Hotel Astoria in Paris was under German management, and the directors had arranged to offer a *déjeuner* to the Emperor on the occasion of his triumphant entry and had submitted a menu.

Sir John a march half right and generally within boundaries so restricted that it was impossible to appoint a separate road to each division. The move was to be covered by the Cavalry, and Allenby proceeded to make good the ground from Fere-en-Tardenois westward to within about a mile of the road from Chateau Thierry to Soissons. The march of the Brigade that day was first due east and then north-east; there were frequent standstills to let infantry and guns go through, there was soaking rain, there was a crossing of the Ourcq at Bressy, and there were billets eventually assigned to the First Life Guards in Loupeigne, and to the Second Life Guards and Blues in a farm four miles north of it. But on arrival the French were found to be *beati possidentes* of the billets, and in drenching rain, driving wind, and dropping temperature a dismal bivouac in an open field must be substituted.

"I think we shall have a rough and tumble to-day, for they have entrenched a rearguard position at Soissons; they can't get their stuff away." So ran Sir John's telegram on the morning of the 12th to the Secretary of State, and it is not amiss to compare it with von Klück's much later statement that trench warfare began on that day. G.H.Q. orders enjoined that the pursuit should be continued, the crossing places of the Aisne seized, and the high ground on the northern side of the river occupied. On a dark day of heavy rain the low clouds forbade aerial reconnaissance, and roads, as they became baths of mud, hampered movements. The cavalry was, as usual, pushed out early with its objective the Vesle, the river running from south-east to north-east down a broad valley to meet the Aisne at Conde. The regiment had a long halt at Quiney; the rain was ceaseless, the inaction irritating, and the continuous roar of artillery suggested, even to the uninformed, that the enemy had

decided, for better or worse, to face about and give battle again on the banks of the Aisne. At Braisne—which Briggs had earlier cleared of the Germans—there was another pause before crossing the Vesle, when the news filtered through that the French Army on our right had reached that river along its entire front, having gained Visme at heavy expense of life, and that the Sixth Army on the left was drawn up on the Aisne—from Soissons to Compiègne—and was preparing to cross it though every bridge had been broken down. The general situation at nightfall found the British Army itself across the Vesle and close up to the Aisne; the particular situation of the Regiment was that their allotted billets at Vauxtin had again been preoccupied, that they must link their horses, light fires with green wood and numbed fingers, curl themselves together in a ploughed field, and in such soaked and sorry condition pass the vigil of the Battle of the Aisne.* “The army will continue the pursuit at 7 a.m., the cavalry will use the eastern road allotted to the First Corps.” Such was the order from G.H.Q. for the 13th, but by 4 a.m. General Hunter Weston had secured for the advance guard of the Fourth Division a passage across the Aisne, had surprised and driven in the German outposts facing him, and the Eleventh Brigade, after a cruel thirty hours’ march, was occupying, almost in anticipation of plan, the edge of

* A little later a German diary fell into the hands of the Regiment which showed the contemporary discomfort of the enemy. September 13th: “We have marched every day, and last night too, in pouring rain; we have retreated because our army is too weak; we have marched without either coffee or bread, drenched to the skin, with chattering teeth. And still the machine goes on. What is asked of us is more than human strength can stand. We were ordered to charge. Covered with sweat we reached the firing line, but without firing a single shot. We were ordered to fix bayonets. We hurled ourselves at the enemy, mad with anger at the heavy losses.”

the plateau from the spur north of Ste. Marguerite to within a mile of Crouy.

The Household Cavalry Regiment paraded—looking very un-parade-like—at 6 a.m., and after waiting for an hour for further orders was dismissed to dry itself. Fortunately the downpour ceased, the sun came out, the transport—together with letters and Captain Combe, fresh from England—turned up at Vauxière, some two miles away, and the hot meal inside and the warmer atmosphere without combined in salutary effect. In the early afternoon a move was made through Bomy until the broad, winding ribbon of the Aisne lay below, and a halt was called to let the First Guards Brigade, under General Ivor Maxse, stride through. Happy greetings were exchanged and lively satisfaction expressed in that hard marching and heavy fighting had evidently done little to mar the appearance, and nothing to quench the spirits, of the Foot Guards. Bingham followed on after Maxse, and later crossed the river at Villers by pontoon bridges, the Germans having successfully included the standing bridges in their work of destruction.

At Neuilly, north of the river, and again further north at Pagnan, the Regiment came up in support of the guns, the Second Life Guards being ordered to hold an elevation near Paissy. In front loomed the long ridge of the Chemin des Dames—that future Via Dolorosa for our French Allies—rising out of the plain of Champagne and extending westward for five-and-twenty miles until abreast of Soissons, where it bifurcates near the village of Juvigny. At Pagnan, where Byng was directed, the hill was already crowded with troops, and after dark Cook was told to billet himself as best he could at Revillon and bring his officers to share such scratch meal as the Brigadier might produce.

With the stand of the Germans on the Aisne new

strategic conditions arose, under which, obviously, Cavalry could play, as Cavalry, but a minor part, and the military historian in his narrative of the battle—apart from the stirring action of the Second Cavalry Brigade on the 20th—makes but little allusion to it other than to pay tribute to their value as mobile and reliable reserves.

On the 14th the Regiment moved east of Paissy in thick mist, drizzling rain and increasing din, and was then asked to give a hand to the Scots Guards in their trench digging.

For two days no change in the situation was apparent ; no impression seemed to have been made on the German position, no dying down of the fusillade seemed likely ; no limit could be set to the “ Black Marias ” streaming and screaming from the eight-inch howitzers brought up from Maubeuge. “ I am still puzzled as to what is before us. We know of all the Corps of the First German Army and one or two Russian formations which have been brought up ; but their early vigour seems to have gone from them, and were it not for the strength of their position and the heavy guns they have in position against us we would turn them out now.” This was the plucky if rather perplexing telegram which the Commander-in-Chief despatched to the War Office on the 17th. The attacks that day were specially directed against the extreme right of the British and the extreme left of the French, the latter a little loosely held by a Moroccan battalion, who had to be supported at some cost by our Second Infantry Brigade. The Queen’s Regiment also suffered heavily that afternoon, partly under bombardment, partly under a particularly dirty German ruse, and Cook was hurriedly asked to send up his Regiment dismounted into the trenches to relieve the gallant Queen’s ; in the course of the afternoon several of the

H.C.

F

Second Life Guards, including Corporal-Major Imber, were wounded. The Commander-in-Chief now issued an eulogistic order in which he reminded his troops that this was the third day they had been "holding the position they had gained against the most desperate counter-attack and a hail of heavy artillery. I am unable," he added, "to find adequate words in which to express the admiration I feel for their magnificent conduct. The French Armies on our right and left are making good progress, and I feel sure that we have only to hold on with tenacity to the ground we have won for a very short time longer, when the Allies will be again in full pursuit of a beaten enemy. The self-sacrificing devotion and spirit of the British Army in France will carry all before it." Sir John, whatever rein he gave to his optimism, took the precaution of detaching one of General Pulteney's Divisions to act as an army reserve, confided to it the preparation of an entrenched position selected in the dire event of a retreat south of the Aisne, and a few days later could tell Joffre the site was ready for any contingency.

On the 18th Bingham had a good many casualties from shells dropping in the support area at Paissy, and was allowed to shift his billets south of the river to Vauxière.

A long dripping day was spent by the Regiment on the 19th under the Ridge at Paissy with the momentary expectation of an excursion to the front line, and when the Life Guards went back to billets at dusk, with the sad story that their Brigadier's Coldstream son was among the slain, the Blues remained on duty, and were to lose as brave a subaltern as ever drew a cavalry sword. Soon after dawn the Germans attacked the Moroccans on the right of the British line and hustled them back; there was an awkward gap, a rush by the West Yorkshires to fill it, a rally of the Moroccans, some confusion, an urgent

message entrusted to young Naylor Leyland, and a death wound to pierce him while carrying out his instructions. "Such a good lad ; we were all so fond of him." So wrote his Captain of one of those ardent boys who long to have their chance in war, and who in war find just the life they love, and perhaps the death for which they would not have turned aside.

The German guns released from Maubeuge were now in full play, and Jack Johnsons and Black Marias were becoming odiously familiar. The diaries for the next fortnight have their jottings of casualties ; of hurried trips to the trenches to meet local crises, of intermittent bombardment in daily increasing intensity ; of the strength which modern warfare lends to defence ; of rumours of Russian victories which lost nothing in colour as they passed from lip to lip ; of a fruitless spy hunt by the Blues * ; of a cessation on the 20th of the abominable rain which for eight days had soaked troops and trenches ; of two blessed rest days ; of a draft from England, admirably keen but still a little unsophisticated, and of the very first " Paris leave," which consisted of a rush to the city and back by Gurney and Astor to get stores. The more informed notes suggest the realisation that a deadlock had set in which could only be called off by a *coup* on the open flank towards the west, and that G.H.Q. orders indicated the official commencement of trench warfare. When it became fairly certain that neither position would be " rushed " the daily excursion to Paissy was changed from a brigade to a regimental basis, which

* The occasion was not without solemnity. The Third Hussars and Blues turned out dismounted and beat the woods ; the Life Guards followed as spectators, four Intelligence Officers arrived in a car to give a cachet to the proceeding, and the farmer whose terrain was to be searched was sent behind the lines. But the spies were either elusive or imaginary, and after an exhaustive inquiry a blank had to be recorded.

involved only one regiment going into support while the other two sat fast in billets. Here was a much-improved arrangement, which, together with a growing cunning as to the country's resources of protection from artillery, made life much less unpleasant. Regiments not for duty would use the caves which honeycombed the steep hills round Paissy as shelter for their horses, both when standing by and when their riders were in the firing line ; a great saving of horseflesh and a comparative immunity from danger was thus effected. Officers, too, finding themselves with a little unaccustomed leisure, looked round to see how this could best be enjoyed. To make up arrears of sleep was the first consideration ; to improve the commissariat and improvise something in the nature of laundry work was the next. These requirements being satisfied, recreation had to be considered, and this was found in the form of rather fitful partridge shooting, a sport rendered the more speculative because the only fowling-pieces obtainable were short-barrelled obsolete guns eligible rather for a museum than for catering for the demands of the mess.

On September 24th Sir John unfolded to Kitchener his proposal to transfer his troops to the extreme left of the Allied line. The Commander-in-Chief had been much heartened to make this *demarche* by the War Secretary's annunciation that an Army Corps and a Cavalry Division were on their way to him from India, that the Seventh Division was being rapidly prepared for the field, and that the Eighth would be but a little behind it ; that he might look almost immediately to a third British cavalry division, and that a bunch of selected Territorial battalions would shortly come under his command. Sir John's move itself was for the moment contingent on the attack which General Castelnau was to make at Roye, but his plan had everything to recommend it ; full

favour was accorded to it by the Cabinet, and the approval of Joffre—qualified at certain points—was secured in a memorandum of the 30th, and orders were at once issued which would bring the British Army back to Flanders, where until the end of the war it would fight, and where in the end of the war it was to prevail.

On October 4th Allenby was under notice to proceed to the "neighbourhood of Lille." His route was to be through St. Ouen, Amiens, and St. Pol. The first move was to be after nightfall, and all possible concealment of troops and transport was enjoined for the next two days. Half an hour after midnight Bingham, after a fine moonlight ride, reined up at St. Rémy, remained there for the day, and in the evening set out for Crépy. The Household Cavalry Regiment was in rear, and after a few miles was halted by the Brigade Major, who carried orders to Cook to return to Blenzy, just north of St. Rémy. Transport was collected, and a short cut was found to Blenzy, where a specially capacious farm and a hospitable farmer afforded admirable billets. The reason of the return journey was that the Regiment had been placed at the disposal of the Commander of the First Corps for the flank movement, and at Braine, soon after noon on the 6th, Cook reported himself to Sir Douglas, who asked that the First Life Guards Squadron should remain saddled up during the next day.

For ten days the Regiment waited on the First Corps, each squadron in turn remaining ready for any action at a moment's notice. There was not much to do, but there was plenty to talk about: the real meaning of the flank march, the real chance of any speedy end to the war, the prospective advent of the new armies, the peril and fall of Antwerp. Hugh Dawnay was close by at Haig's headquarters, and was often seen, but was a model of discretion. It was no secret, however, that the House-

hold Cavalry Brigade had arrived, and there was speculation as to when and where they would receive their baptism of fire ; it was also correctly—but regretfully—surmised that the composite regiment would eventually be absorbed in the larger unit.

On October 9th Sir John, who was shifting his headquarters to St. Omer,* formed the two cavalry divisions under De Lisle and Gough into an Army Corps under Allenby, and the Fourth Cavalry Brigade falling, of course, to Gough. Six days later the First Corps moved away from the Aisne, and the Composite Regiment started—"A" and "C" Squadrons from Neuilly St. Front, and "B" Squadron from Fere-en-Tardenois—for Hazebrouck, to detrain there after a tedious journey on the morning of the 17th, and to receive orders to march that afternoon to Kemmel and thence to Farm Cross Roads, one mile N.N.W. of Messines, where Bingham was found.

On October 18th, the eve of the first Battle of Ypres, the front occupied by the British Second, Third and Fourth and Cavalry Corps—conjointly with three French Cavalry Divisions—was thirty-five miles in length. Thus each Division had roughly to defend six miles, and each Cavalry Brigade 600 yards. The post of the Second Cavalry Division was the railway N. of Deulemont to Tenbrielen, and Cook, after spending one day in Messines, took over trenches at Halte at dawn on the 19th, with the Third Hussars on his left and the Fifth Dragoon Guards on his right. The operations which now set in and lasted till

* "8 Oct. Have arrived at Abbeville (*en route* to St. Omer). 2nd Army Corps has completed detraining here and is marching N. towards S. Pol. Will arrive on the left of the French Army near Lille, perhaps 11th October. 3rd Army Corps commences entraining at Compiègne to-morrow and will detrain at S. Omer ; the 1st Army Corps will follow when relieved on the Aisne, I hope on 10th or 11th. I have conferred with Joffre and Castelnau on my way here ; French making progress in outflanking movement on left." (Sir John to Kitchener.)

mid-November were the final run-in of the race to the sea, each contestant having a definite plan of attack against the northern flank of his opponent. It was said with some truth that in the race the Allies were always twenty-four hours and an Army Corps behind the enemy ; thus their chance of outflanking their foe was always remote, and their risk of being themselves enveloped was ever present. No period in the war was more momentous ; if ground had been given, as for instance at Mons or in the spring of 1918, it would have meant nothing less than the entire loss of Belgian territory and of the Channel ports, involving not only the almost certain loss of the war, but also the decline of the British Empire and irreparable damage to the civilised world. Such were the weighty stakes for which the Allies were playing, and in the desperate fight which was to rage the Household Cavalry would play no insignificant part.

During the 19th the Cavalry Corps could effectively protect the flank of the newly-arrived and already sorely-tried Seventh Division, but could make no sort of advance, and in the evening Allenby was simply told to maintain himself where he was and to pin his opponent to the River line. But the opponent had no idea of being pinned, and by eight o'clock the next morning the Corps Commander was pretty sure that he would be subjected to a strong attack, though he could not know that attack would be made against his 9,000 men with six cavalry divisions and four Jaeger battalions. By noon these had crossed the Lys at Pont Rouge and Warneton, and further forces were seen moving on a point two miles north of Comines, where Gough was placed. The Fourth Cavalry Brigade had now a good deal to suffer in their trenches, which, hastily scraped out and not too happily sited, bore little relationship to the trench of the future ; between midday and dusk, while the Third Hussars were mulcted of five

officers, the Composite Regiment lost the Squadron Leader of the First Life Guards killed, Murray Smith mortally wounded, and Trotter, Euan Wallace, Pemberton, and 45 non-commissioned officers and men more or less seriously hurt. John Cavendish, perhaps exposing himself a little too freely, was giving his quiet, clear orders to his squadron, when an enemy machine gun marked him down and he fell close beside the machine gun of the Second Life Guards, in serving which Murray Smith had earlier been hurt. In eight strenuous weeks Cavendish had served his country with the same characteristic imperturbability and constitutional modesty which had marked him through the long stages of the South African War ; with his heart in his work—especially when that work lay outside its showier circumstances—he was essentially one of those soldiers so careless of their own benefit, so careful of everything else, that only when their place is empty is it realised how nobly that place has been filled. Under sheer weight of numbers the Cavalry had to fall back a little to a position already selected, leaving outposts in touch with the enemy. The German advance had been small in itself, but had in it much of menace, and that night every available cavalryman was set to digging, while two battalions of the Eleventh Infantry Brigade stretched out a hand in case of need.

In the early morning of the 20th Allenby told De Lisle to sit tight, but asked Gough to try to get back a bit of the front he had been obliged to surrender the day before. Gough was willing, but before he could even issue any orders five divisions of German cavalry were at the attack, and instead of gaining he was eventually compelled to give a little ground.

“ Dug ourselves in all the morning ” is the entry, and, as it proved, the last entry, in Cook’s diary. The right of his Regiment lay close to a windmill perched on a mount :

the windmill was an attractive target ; it must have been a grim jest to see men smothered in flour as well as bespattered with shrapnel, and a shell, perhaps jocosely directed, struck Cook and set a term to his soldier's career. He was moved—with Astor and others wounded at the same time—the next day to Bailleul and thence home ; for some weeks he seemed to make fair progress and to make light of his hurt, but exhaustion suddenly set in, and on the 4th November he succumbed to a wound which at first was hardly classed as dangerous.

The command of the Regiment now fell to Crichton,* who for a little more than a week was to bring to bear on his work both his varied military experience and a charm of character—difficult to define but impossible to deny—which seemed to rob discipline of any of its irksomeness.† The Cavalry Corps made little stir on the 20th, a day distinctly adverse to the Allies, at the end of which the Germans, outnumbering them by two to one, were making

* “ Lord Crichton has taken over command ; the Regiment is very pleased ” is an extract from a Trooper's letter which reflects no shadow of reproach on one officer, but indicates the peculiar popularity of the other.

† “ Thank you ever so much for your kind letter of congratulation ; it was luck getting mentioned when there are so many others equally worthy. Your matches arrived last night, and the men are awfully grateful to you for thinking of them, and have asked me to thank you from them. The various papers you have sent me have turned up, and whiled away many a weary hour when nothing was on ; many thanks. We got into rather a hot place last week, and lost John Cavendish and 3 men killed, Joby, Wallace, Peter Combe, Murray Smith and Palmer, and about 40 men wounded. We were holding a very extended front, in fact bluffing, and the Germans came on pretty strong and forced us out of our trenches with shrapnel and rifle fire ; it was when retiring that we lost the men ; the very next day Royden, John Astor and 3 men were hit with a shell, and I found myself in command, but my exalted state will be short-lived I fear, as I hear we are to be broken up and sent back to the Seventh Brigade to stiffen them up a bit ; at all events in the case of the 2nd L. Gds., who have lost heavily in officers.” (Lord Crichton to Colonel Fitzgerald.)

themselves felt all along the thin line round Ypres, and were being reinforced, according to our air reconnaissance, by troops moving up from Menin. Twenty-four hours later the situation was a little easier ; the semi-circle round the old town was intact, British Brigades had held up German divisions, lost ground had been recovered, the French Ninth Corps had struck a smart blow, Sir John could wire that he was confident (when was Sir John not confident ?), and the Composite Regiment, relieved after dark by a section of the *débutante* Lahore Division, could refresh itself for three days in billets at a farm three-quarters of a mile north of Wytschaette.

The story now ran that the Kaiser had arrived in the battle area, and that, baulked of his entry into Paris, he would proceed to open the road through Ypres to Calais, and would incidentally tread into dust the British in his way. The British had no idea of being thus trodden on, but well-grounded apprehension grew into excusable uneasiness with the knowledge that the enemy was massing in formidable force, and with perhaps the surmise that Saturday, October 31st, was to prove one of the most agonising days of the war. About noon the Fourth Cavalry Brigade and the London Scottish, who were to make a splendid first appearance, were summoned to help in warding off an attack on Messines ; Gough, however, received at least a *quid pro quo*, as not only two squadrons of the First Life Guards, but also a French Cuirassier Brigade and four French Battalions, came for the afternoon under his orders.

Towards five o'clock Bingham and the London Scottish were exposed for three-quarters of an hour to a violent assault by the Sixth Bavarian Reserve Division. When the firing ceased, a loud hullabaloo was heard—the Austrian National Hymn being varied with blowing of horns, loud shouts of “Hoch !” and strident martial

tunes with *fortissimo* effects. At 7 o'clock came a lull, and Gough could reorganise his line in time to repel another attack which took place at 10 o'clock and lasted for half an hour. Then came another brief snatch of comparative quiet, the forerunner of a determined onrush at midnight. Under the rays of the moon the Germans, open-mouthed and heavy-handed, came, as it seemed, straight for the Composite Regiment, line after line and shoulder to shoulder. At 200 yards the Regiment opened fire and poured in round after round, and at any rate saw live men climbing over their dead comrades simply to fall themselves. The Germans swung left-handed short of the Blues' trenches, and made for the Life Guards, surging into their trenches to engage in hand-to-hand fighting. Twice the "B" and "C" Squadrons were driven out, and twice they came back to regain what they had lost against overwhelming odds. In all this din and turmoil Crichton seemed to be everywhere, and with a word of encouragement at everyone's elbow. Until the moment that he vanished into space it seemed as if each soldier had had speech and touch with him, as he rallied one group, easily controlled another, and urged a third to some super-human endeavour. When the Squadrons were pushed irresistibly a little way back, inter-communication became almost impossible, but Corporal Eason was able to report their retirement to Bowlby, who was loath to believe it, and so, ten minutes later, the same messenger returned, now bleeding from a wound, to repeat the information, adding that the enemy had worked round, and was nearly behind the C. Squadron. This was no less than the truth, for at that moment two machine guns opened fire from the rear, and the Blues were thus under attack from three sides. Two troops turned right, facing outwards, and securing some slender cover behind a fence and some cottages, when Crichton appeared through the gloom and

shouted to Bowlby to retire at once, as everyone else had gone. Turner's troop covered the movement with a couple of minutes' rapid shooting, and in the darkness and confusion was unable, even with that interval, to get touch with the Squadron, and Bowlby found himself with Titchfield and some thirty men, representing his Command. Crichton, on his way to Brigade Headquarters for fresh orders, heard from the Brigade Major that the Lincolns and Northumberland Fusiliers—although pretty well done up with marching and fighting—were hurrying on to make a counter-attack ; he therefore proceeded to arrange with the Battalion Commanders that he would hold the main road while the Infantry moved up on his right. Crichton then asked Bowlby to take charge of the regiment while he rode over to explain the situation to the Twentieth Hussars. His road was through the village, which but a minute or two earlier had been reported clear of the enemy ; but Bowlby shouted a warning word, as in the dim light some figures could be seen who might or might not be the Indians from the right, which at one time they were holding. The sound of his horse's hoofs died away, and no sound of any shot came from that direction ; yet in the darkness a foul deed was done, and no more was ever to be seen—and for a long time nothing was to be heard—of an officer who was alike a dauntless comrade and a dearly-loved friend.

Immediately afterwards a fierce fusillade broke out again from the front, and as there was no sort of cover Bowlby must withdraw his Squadron and fall back on the advancing Lincolns, where he found a troop and half of the First Life Guards with Smith and Leigh, the former of whom was soon to fall and the latter to be wounded. There was a short pause before another onrush of Germans making strange noises, which they hoped would cause them to be mistaken for Indians ; no shot was fired at

them until, coming within a few yards of the British, they themselves loosed off and exposed their identity. There then ensued another fierce hand-to-hand struggle, in which the Germans' reinforcements seemed inexhaustible, and slowly Cavalry and Infantry were driven back through the village on to the ridge that lay behind. The Germans did not emerge from the village, but their guns were directed on to the ridge and compelled a further backward move. Bowlby could now scrape together thirty men of the First Life Guards, three of the Second, and thirty Blues ; the whereabouts of the others was problematical, but it was reasonably hoped that they might be with the Twentieth Hussars. At Bingham's request the Lincolns and Northumberlands would now try a throw with the Third Hussars in support, and to the Hussars Bowlby added his little quota. But the Germans were now in full and fell possession and our attack was foredoomed to fail, though two companies charged within a few paces of the German position, while two companies of the French Thirty-Second Division, approaching Wytschaette from the north-west, made a fine stroke, but were unable to make any real impression. The desperate movement, however, in which the splendid Lincolns had over 300 casualties, was not without first-rate value : the loss of life was lamentable, but invaluable time was gained, the line held, and before nine in the morning the Twelfth Lancers and a Troop of the Twentieth Hussars had broken back into Wytschaette, and before the Huns could recover from their surprise the French Thirty-Second Division poured on them from the north-west, and pushed them out of the village and off the contingent high ground. The Composite Regiment had played its short, but weighty part ; its last day of fighting as a unit had cost it dear ; it was now to be merged into the larger formation whose depleted ranks cried for relief.

CHAPTER IV

THE First, Second, Third and Fifth Divisions had been despatched agreeably with the original Haldane programme on the declaration of war, and a fortnight later the Fourth Division joined up with them. Then the more nervous of the Ministers became alarmed for the internal safety of the country, and on August 26th the Foreign Minister was writing to the Premier :

“ I am strongly of opinion that there ought to be no question of sending another Division out of the country, and if it can be stopped going to Dover I think it would be a good thing. We must husband our resources for the present.”

Immediately on his return from Paris on September 2nd the War Secretary wrung from his colleagues their consent that the Sixth Division should be hurried to the Front, where it arrived just, but only just, in time for the Battle of the Aisne. But to the Seventh Division under the famous General Capper he feared the Cabinet would cling, although its presence might be imperatively required to stem a maleficent westward march of the enemy. Moreover, the immortal Seventh Division, whether at home or abroad, was to have a powerful partner in the Third Cavalry Division, which was being composed of units, some in England, some to be drawn from foreign peace-time stations, and to command which General Byng* was summoned from Egypt. The Royals and the Tenth Hussars were to be brought from South Africa, and together with the Third Dragoon Guards to make up General Makins' Sixth Cavalry Brigade, while even before the Composite

* Major-General the Hon. Julian Byng, later Lord Byng of Vimy.

Regiment had sailed for France the Sovereign had gladly agreed that, in accordance with a scheme roughly outlined a year earlier, the Seventh Brigade should consist of his Household Cavalry.

On August 17th the three Commanding Officers, the Duke of Teck,* Colonel Ferguson and Colonel Gordon Wilson, were summoned to the War Office to confer with the Adjutant-General as to the largest contribution the Household Cavalry could immediately make to the war. The question of restricting this to a Second Household Cavalry Regiment was mentioned, only to be dismissed, and it was quickly decided that nothing less than a Household Cavalry Brigade for service abroad—as already approved by the august Colonel-in-Chief—should be forthcoming. In 1913 General Allenby had recommended that after forming the Composite Regiment for Expeditionary Force, each regiment should be brought up to 410 “other ranks” for employment with a special force for home defences. He estimated that 500 Line Cavalry Reservists would be required to complete the three Regiments, and proposed that twice a year the Commanding Officers should inform the units from which they were to draw men what their present actual requirements were. What was left of the three regiments in barracks—roughly about 150 men—was therefore gathered up and stiffened with Reservists † into three war-strength regiments, and it was further ordained that three Household Cavalry Reserve Regiments under Colonel Sir George Holford, Major Ames—who was succeeded later by Lieut.-Colonel Hankey—and Colonel Fitzgerald should be formed and trained to reinforce their comrades at the Front. The Brigade would enjoy the status and emolu-

* Created Marquess of Cambridge 1917: Mil. Sec. to C.-in-C. 1916.

† On December 1st, 1903, recruits were enrolled to serve eight years with the Colours, and four years with the Reserve.

ments of Household Cavalry, though to man it Reservists from Lancers, Dragoons and Hussars must be taken in, officers from the Cavalry of the line and Indian Cavalry must join to fight "for the period of the War," promotion to the ranks of N.C.O. must be freely made, and *carte blanche* must be secured to draw upon hunting establishments for the necessary horses.* In less than three weeks the Brigade at war strength was mustered—the Dragoons falling by lot to the First Life Guards, the Lancers to the Second, and Hussars to the Blues—and a few days later encamped for training at Ludgershall.

The First Life Guards had the extra burden of finding a new Headquarters Staff, as their Headquarters had gone out with the Household Cavalry Regiment, but good material was to hand and forthcoming. The batch of junior officers brought in somehow and from somewhere were uniformly of the right sort, and the wholesale promotion of troopers and junior N.C.O.'s to the rank of Corporal of Horse produced no hitch or *contretemps*.

It was decided with very little hesitation, and with no heartburning, that the command of the Brigade should devolve on General Kavanagh, a highly trained and highly distinguished cavalryman, who was senior by some years to either of the Regimental Colonels, and who chose for his Brigade Major † a dashing Hussar, Captain Neale.

There was sure to be found a marked difference between the original members of the regiments and the men now attached to them. In the case of the First Life Guards the regiments mainly represented were the Inniskilling Dragoons and the K.D.G.'s, with smaller numbers from the Third, Sixth and Seventh Dragoon Guards. All these

* It was laid down that no more black horses were to be allowed to leave the country.

† The Duke of Wellington denied the right (which, as a matter of fact, they had never asserted) of the Household Brigade to select a Brigade Major from among themselves.

regiments bore distinguished records for hard work, and the men had learned their lesson throughout the Empire. Their first attitude on being re-posted was, not unnaturally, antagonistic: they found the atmosphere strange, and for a while could not breathe quite freely in it.

Active service pulled the Brigade together, and the placing of the Dragoons in troops in which the majority of the N.C.O.'s were also Dragoons further improved matters. That the Reservists from the Cavalry of the Line quickly proved their sterling worth is incontestable. Their discipline and system of work was different to that of the Household Cavalry. Their method of addressing their N.C.O.'s, for instance, caused old-established Life Guards to raise hands in pious horror. But the N.C.O.'s concerned knew their men. They were for the main part men who could be easily led, but driven with difficulty. An observer watching them at "a job of work" looked in vain for the N.C.O., because he would be in the midst with his jacket off. It was required of the authorities to close their eyes when work was over, as their relaxation was of the more robust, even law-breaking, kind. This was particularly the case where the Inniskillings were concerned, who, although Orangemen in theory, were prone to observe all Irish festivals impartially.

For the ordinary business of soldiering in the field the Dragoons were unsurpassable. Turn a crowd of them loose in an empty field, and within two hours they would have attended to their cattle, prepared and consumed a couple of meals, foraged they only knew whence, and made themselves as thoroughly at home as less experienced troops might have done in a week. On the march they were always well provided for, producing rations, authorised or otherwise, as a conjurer produces rabbits.

z.c

•

No one could deny that they were clean, both man and beast—as cleanliness went in those days. It took a surprise raid, a snowstorm or an earthquake to shake a Dragoon off his daily shave.

For the Life Guards, properly so-called, a different military view must be taken. They had been trained entirely in England, and much of their duty was ceremonial. Their active service training had consisted each year of a month's musketry at Pirbright and a short time on manœuvres. But (and herein lay the advantage) everything they had learned had been learned, so to speak, by numbers, and duties in camp or field were carried out with the accord of a drill movement. The brand of discipline familiar to them stood the test perfectly well. This, and their well-known adaptability to the *status quo*, enabled them to come into line with their more practical comrades very quickly, until they were equal (one hesitates to say superior) to any body of cavalry in the field. They enhanced their already great reputation for reliability, and accomplished all and more than that which was required of them.

So was this strange assortment of regiments welded together, and people may have smiled to see men of 5 feet 4 inches wearing the badges of the Household Cavalry ; but however small their stature, they were to add robustly to the reputation of their adopted regiments, and at the same time to admit that they themselves had gained by inclusion in them, and by being able to take the correct measure of comrades whom they might previously have regarded as feather-bed soldiers.

Nominal Roll of Officers of the First Life Guards who embarked on October 6th, 1914, and served in France with the First Life Guards, 7th Cavalry Brigade.

Lieutenant-Colonel H.H. the Duke of Teck.

Lieutenant-Colonel E. H. Brassey, M.V.O.

OFFICERS HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY BRIGADE 82A

Major the Hon. A. F. Stanley, D.S.O.
Captain Lord Hugh Grosvenor.
Captain L. H. Hardy.
Captain the Hon. E. H. Wyndham. (Adjutant.)
Major Sir Frederick H. Carden.
Captain W. St. George Clowes.
Captain Viscount Newry and Mourne.
Captain E. D. F. Kelly.
Lieutenant Sir Richard V. Sutton, Bt., M.C.
Lieutenant C. D. Leyland.
Lieutenant the Marquis of Tweeddale.
Lieutenant the Hon. G. Ward, M.V.O.
Lieutenant Lord Somers.
Lieutenant R. C. Bingham. (Appointed A.D.C. to G.O.C., Fourth
Cavalry Brigade, 15/10/14.)
Lieutenant the Hon. W. R. Wyndham.
Lieutenant J. C. Close Brooks.
Lieutenant Sir Richard Levinge.
Lieutenant Sir Philip Brocklehurst.
2nd-Lieutenant Lord Althorp.
2nd-Lieutenant the Hon. Hugo W. G. Denison.
2nd-Lieutenant H. A. B. St. George.
Surgeon-Lieutenant E. D. Anderson.
Veterinary-Captain J. Tagg.
Captain and Quarter-Master W. Garton.
Captain Sir Henry Dundas. (Interpreter.)
2nd-Lieutenant Gage Brown. (Interpreter.)
2nd-Lieutenant R. J. Hamilton. (Interpreter.)

Nominal Roll of Officers of the Second Life Guards
who embarked on October 6th, 1914, and served in
France with the Second Life Guards, 7th Cavalry Brigade.

Lieutenant-Colonel A. F. H. Ferguson.
Major the Earl of Athlone, G.C.B., &c.
Major J. C. Brinton, M.V.O., D.S.O. (R. of O.)
Captain H. C. S. Ashton.
Captain Hon. A. O'Neill.
Captain Lord Belper.
Captain V. R. Montgomerie.
Captain W. W. S. Cuninghame.
Captain A. M. Vandeleur. (R. of O.)
Captain F. P. C. Pemberton.
Captain Hon. M. Bowes-Lyon.
Lieutenant A. S. Hoare.

82B STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

Lieutenant and Adjutant S. G. Menzies.
Lieutenant Sir R. G. V. Duff, Bt. (R. of O.)
Lieutenant G. J. Sandys. (R. of O.)
Lieutenant T. S. Jobson. (Attached Seventeenth Light Cavalry.)
Lieutenant H. J. H. McClintock. (R. of O., Eighteenth Hussars.)
Lieutenant J. A. St. C. Anstruther. (Attached from Sixth Dragoon Guards.)
2nd-Lieutenant Viscount Carlton.
2nd-Lieutenant K. R. Palmer.
2nd-Lieutenant A. C. Hobson.
2nd-Lieutenant M. W. A. P. Graham.
2nd-Lieutenant K. G. Menzies. (Special Reserve, Second Life Guards.)
2nd-Lieutenant H. L. Farquhar.
Surgeon-Major J. H. Power.
Veterinary-Major E. P. Barry.
Veterinary-Lieutenant J. B. Walker. (Temporarily attached.)
Lieutenant and Quarter-Master H. Hidden.
2nd-Lieutenant C. W. B. Prescott. (Interpreter.)
2nd-Lieutenant S. G. Simpson. (Interpreter.)

ROYAL HORSE GUARDS

Colonel Gordon Wilson in Command.
Major Lord Tweedmouth.
Captain Brassey.
Captain Lord Alistair Innes-Ker.
Captain Lord Gerard.
Captain Harrison.
Captain T. Fitzgerald.
Captain Marquis of Northampton.
Captain A. Foster.
Captain Hon. R. L. Molyneux.
Captain G. Meyrick.
Captain W. Naper.
Captain A. B. Palmer.
Captain H. Wilson.
Captain D. Lyons.
Lieutenant O. E. Greaves.
Lieutenant Marquis of Anglesey.
Lieutenant Lord A. Leveson-Gower.
Lieutenant Lord Worsley.
Lieutenant A. Mackintosh.
Lieutenant Lord Victor Paget.
Lieutenant Angus Campbell.
Lieutenant Baron Gunsberg. (Interpreter.)

Lieutenant the Duke of Roxburghe.
 2nd-Lieutenant Hon. A. Coke.
 2nd-Lieutenant R. Fernie.
 2nd-Lieutenant C. Kerr.
 2nd-Lieutenant Hon. F. Lambton.
 2nd-Lieutenant D. Trefusis.
 2nd-Lieutenant A. Wilson.
 2nd-Lieutenant W. Hann.
 2nd-Lieutenant Lord D. Compton.
 2nd-Lieutenant G. Greaves.
 Lieutenant and Quarter-Master C. Harford.
 Veterinary-Major Pallis.
 Surgeon-Major Pares.

Captain the Earl of Clanwilliam, Lieutenant J. Hutchison, Lieutenant Hon. C. Phillips, and 2nd-Lieutenant Ward Price joined the Brigade in France in November.

Lieutenant W. Breeze joined two months later and was killed on March 14th, 1915, by the explosion of a gun of which he had special knowledge and which was being tested by the Commander-in-Chief.

Such was the composition of the Household Cavalry Brigade, who quickly settled down into working order, responded enthusiastically to every call made on them by their new trainer, and whose chief anxiety was as to the date on which they would find themselves outward bound.*

On October 2nd Kitchener was wiring to Sir John :

" A serious situation has been caused by the German attempt to besiege Antwerp [which has now culminated in placing Antwerp in very grave danger of falling in a short time]. We can hardly hope the town will hold out unless Joffre can send some regular troops to act there in conjunction with all the regular troops we can send, that is the 7th Division and a Division of Cavalry. If you are disengaging from the Line would it be possible to suggest to Joffre that if he can send troops you should join the 7th Division and anything else from here with whatever portion of your force is thought necessary for the relief of Antwerp, while the remainder moves into position ? "

Events moved too rapidly ; the German second surprise

* One of the Colonels called on the Secretary for War and naïvely said : " Is there any harm in my asking when the Household Cavalry are likely to start ? " " Oh, no harm whatever in your asking," was the equally naïve reply.

84 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

had been too cleverly planned, and finally the German guns proved too heavy to allow Antwerp to be rescued by the combined force which Kitchener proposed, but Antwerp's agony was his plea to induce the Government to part with a body of picked men.* The War Secretary at first—a little ingenuously—urged their dispatch overseas as a temporary measure ; he proposed that they should form the Fourth Corps and act as an independent unit for a specific purpose under Sir Henry † Rawlinson, who was in temporary command of the Sixth Division, and was ordered to proceed at once to Antwerp. Once the troops were in the theatre of war, he was sure that his colleagues would not withdraw so powerful a support to Sir John's command, a support destined just to turn the scale in our favour at the first Battle of Ypres. Military history will scarcely hesitate to say that without the Fourth Corps Ypres would almost certainly have fallen a prey to a brutal enemy, Dunkirk must inevitably have been let go, and Calais could hardly have been saved.

The Household Brigade, with its escort of torpedo boats, steamed from Southampton on the morning of the 7th ; their cargo vessels made excellent provision for the horses, humanity being here a minor consideration and far too excited to care about material comfort, or even to resent their curiously confused packing. The same evening the convoy arrived off the Belgian coast and

* On October 4th Kitchener could telegraph to the First Lord of the Admiralty, who had gone to Antwerp to take any possible measure for its resistance : " Am arranging following expeditionary force for relief of Antwerp : VII Division under General Capper, 18,000 men, 63 guns. Cavalry Division under General Byng, 4,000 men, 12 guns, to arrive Zeebrugge 6-7th October ; naval detachment under General Alston, 8,000 men, already there. The French force will consist of a territorial division of 15,000 men and a Fusilier Marine Brigade of 8,000 men ; grand total, 53,000 men."

† Later Lord Rawlinson, Commander-in-Chief in India.

split into sections for disembarkation at Ostend and Zeebrugge. Two stories floated on board: Byng was to report to Rawlinson * and form part of his corps—this was wholly correct; but the rumour—a rumour which so often prevails before operations have really set in—that the war was almost over was to be roughly disproved by experience.

Early on the 8th the Brigade landed, saddled up, and received successive orders—to be cancelled before they could be acted upon—for their route, with the final intimation that they were to bivouac pretty well where they stood. While they slept the evacuation of Antwerp was being carried out, the Belgian seat of Government was being moved to Havre, and Joffre was wiring to Kitchener :

“Important forces of German cavalry are at present moment in the neighbourhood of Ypres-Menin, in a somewhat difficult situation.

“Pray inform General Rawlinson that it would be highly advantageous if he could send light detachments to operate against their communications. Such action would have result of clearing the district towards which the Belgian Army is to retreat.”

With the fall of Antwerp there disappeared the primary objective of the Fourth Corps as a detached unit; there was in store for it a leading part in one of the most critical battles of all time.

* “The Third Cavalry Division and the Seventh Infantry Division are the only reliable troops I have. I am proposing to occupy Ghent with the Seventh Division on Saturday in order to stretch out a helping hand to the Belgians, and will use the Third Cavalry Division to cover the march and protect my communications; but this will not relieve the siege of Antwerp. I am not strong enough to operate further to the east, and at the same time protect my communications with Bruges and Ostend. If the relief of Antwerp is of vital political importance I am prepared to advance on Malines next week, but this will entail great risk. The point which has to be decided is whether it is worth our while, even at the risk of further weakening the Allied forces on the Aisne, to assume the offensive in Belgium and save Antwerp.” (Rawlinson to Kitchener, October 7th.)

86 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

On the afternoon of the 9th the Cabinet was easily persuaded by the War Secretary to allow both the Seventh Division and the Cavalry Division to form part of the Commander-in-Chief's force, and French telegraphed to Rawlinson :—

“ S. of S. has placed your forces under my orders.

“ . . . you should try to concentrate Belgians further west as soon as possible. I understand you will to-morrow hold a position on the Lys between Ghent and Courtrai. If you can retain this position without much trouble, do so as long as possible, but do not get involved in a big fight. If pressed, retire slowly on line of Dunkirk and St. Omer. You will then be able to join me at St. Omer, where Third Army Corps will complete detraining on October 13th. If, however, you can hold your position on the Lys without incurring much risk or loss, the Second Army Corps or Cavalry will connect up with you at or near Courtrai by October 14th at latest. Let me hear at once what you can do.”

Sir John was painfully alive to the importance of what Rawlinson “ could do.”

From the west von Bessler's army was retreating as the result of the Allied successes on the Aisne. But now their retreat, instead of incurring the risk of being cut off by the transfer of the British troops from the Aisne to the north, was changed into the simple operation of effecting a junction with the invaders of Antwerp. Not only this, but the Germans marching on Bruges from Ypres, where they were on October 7th and 8th, might well meet and maul the Belgians hurrying for safety. Rawlinson by his rapid march south not only threw a protecting arm round the Belgians, but was able to link himself up with the main British Army before the savage German onslaught on Ypres could begin. Thus from the four points of the compass men were hurrying either to avert disaster or to acquire the initiative in the great clash of arms which was imminent.

The first step of the Household Cavalry was a concentration at Bruges, where between citizens and soldiers

there occurred the usual pleasing, if rather embarrassing, exchange of cigars and fruit for cap and shoulder badges. A thirsty trooper would proffer his tinned ration to a civilian with "This is Bully. Swappy for drinky": the proposal would be quite intelligible and the negotiation mutually satisfactory. From the billets on the outskirts of the old town the southward march began on the 10th. The move was proposed to be made by the shortest available path; it eventually took the form of a sprawling figure of 8. The roads, crowded with vehicles carrying Belgian soldiers and the British Naval Division, were blocked by Belgian artillery, who, being ahead, were able to secure much of the accommodation at Roodevode which had been allotted to the Brigade.* The march to Ypres was continued on the 12th, and at the bivouac at Rumbeke that night it was understood that Sir John was pressing Rawlinson to seize and sit in Menin. Accordingly, the next day Ferguson took his Regiment into the town, sprinted vainly after some German cavalry, who had disappeared southwards, and remained on the alert late in the afternoon, when he received instructions to make his way, as fast as darkness and rather jaded horses would allow him, to Winkel St. Eloi. The inability to hold Menin was for many months a bone of bitter contention between the Commander-in-Chief and the Corps Commander, despite the convincing information which the latter was able to adduce as to the presence of a large force ready to swoop down on it at any moment.† A

* O'Neill's Squadron out watching a line from Lichtervede to Wyngheene and is in touch with 6th Cav. Brigade. Reports heavy firing in direction of Houthulst. Transport at 10 p.m., so most of Regiment up till midnight, which seems unnecessary. (Diary of Colonel Ferguson, October 11th.)

† "I am content to leave the Menin controversy where it is. I would not attack Menin, because I knew from my information of Boche

hearty welcome awaited the Brigade on the 14th from the inhabitants of Ypres, who were just recovering from a three days' visit from the Germans, which had cost them no little unpleasantness and some 70,000 francs. A long morning halt was made before an early afternoon move to Kemmel, and an agreeable diversion was created by a Taube flying over the square so low as to fall an easy prey to a fusillade, in which armoured cars, rifles, and revolvers were impartially engaged.

"So far," thus ran an officer's note, "the war has not presented itself in all its grim reality. We have only heard the rumbling of the guns smashing at Antwerp, or smacking the Bosche on the Aisne. The first Uhlan captured and the first scouting cyclist scotched have been objects of curiosity, and perhaps the only thing realised is the importance of the map-reading, which in barracks seemed so boresome."

The grim reality was soon to be tested. Sir John's operation orders, issued on the 15th, included for the first time the Fourth Corps. Covered by its cavalry on its left flank, it was to move between Courtrai and Roulers; to the north of the latter place the mounted men were to betake themselves. Rawlinson was told not to forge ahead of the left of the Third Corps, and was particularly enjoined to keep a sharp look-out towards the north-east for any enemy advance against the Belgian Army. It was roughly understood that a British offensive in combination with the French forces under Generals Maud'huy and d'Urtal was afoot. The immediate object appeared to be to defend Lille, already occupied and abandoned, while the enemy facing Maud'huy would be attacked in their flank while still in numerical inferiority. The fond hope was entertained that the English and French would link up with the Belgians and

movements that we were bound to be surrounded and annihilated if we did. French did not know this, so I thought I was right to disobey his orders, and, as things turned out, I was. That's all." (Rawlinson to G. A.)

fling the Bosche anyhow back to Brussels. On the morning of the 16th the Duke of Teck, whose "A" Squadron was the Brigade advance guard, sent out * patrols under Ward and Brocklehurst, the former by the west, the latter by the east. Brocklehurst's patrol found the enemy on the outskirts of Staden, came under close machine-gun fire, and Trooper Henley was to be the first man in the Household Cavalry Brigade to lay down his life.

That same afternoon the first officer's name was to occur on the Life Guards' Roll of Honour. From West-roosebeke a squadron under O'Neill—himself so soon to disappear from time—scouted towards Oostnieuwkerke, and Robin Duff,† pushing on with a small party, was shot by a sniper stationed at a farm window. Belper's Squadron, followed by Ashton's, was quickly up, and, under a cross-fire, had anyhow accounted for Duff's assassin and a round dozen of his colleagues who were dodging in and out of the neighbouring cottages, when darkness set in and the regiment retired to W., the remainder of the Brigade being that night at Passchendaele. It so happened that some German Hussars had also decided on Passchendaele for their lodging, and, clattering down the road, bumped up against Macintosh's troop, which was on the look-out near the station. A squadron was at once turned out ‡ to back him up, but

* Some Germans were reported by a Belgian as hiding in his farm, and Oswain Greaves was sent with a party to secure them. In the hayloft were found two naked, trembling figures, who knelt on a bed, pleaded for bare life, and expressed themselves more than satisfied to be sent to England as prisoners.

† Duff was lightly buried by the Germans that evening, but the Burgomaster next day succeeded in removing his body to the cemetery at Oo.

‡ "Pickles" Lambton—a fortnight later how bravely he was to die—was enjoying the unwonted luxury of a bath, and, to the delight of his troop, paraded them in pink silk tights, huddling on his clothes while he gave his orders.

before they could come up Mackintosh had sent all the Hussars to the right-about, and emptied a few saddles in the process.

Through the 17th the Fourth Corps as a whole "stood steady," the position at Ypres being helped by four French Cavalry Divisions moving up to the left of the British lines; the next day, in a Brigade reconnaissance towards Roulers, the Blues stumbled on a bevy of German cyclists, put the riders to the sword, and secured their rather useless machines, the "B" Echelon "Blues" enjoying a somewhat similar adventure while returning with supplies. This party, having been fired upon from the farm, promptly dismounted, rushed the building, secured some arms and ammunition, and took a handful of prisoners, of whom two had not disdained the pig-tub as a hiding place.

So far everything seemed to be going to plan: a pleasing sense of superiority prevailed—cavalry against cavalry would surely present no difficulty—but on the 19th the Household Cavalry were to find themselves up against German infantry, and the Second Life Guards were to be rather badly bruised. Before the evening closed in, it was to be realised that the enemy had stealthily assembled five army corps and planned to debouch on the north of the Allied line. The Divisional order* prescribed a matutinal move to the Roulers-Menin road, whence strong reconnaissances were to be pushed out, to be followed by the occupation of Roulers, touch being kept with the French Cavalry at Hoglede.

*

" October 19th.

" From G.O.C. 6th (French) Cavalry Division.

" To G.O.C. English 3rd Cavalry Division.

" The Sixth Division of Cavalry has the order to hold Roulers. Two hostile columns of all arms appear to be preparing to attack it. One coming from Ardois, the other from Iseghem.

" The G.O.C. Sixth Cavalry Division has been informed by verbal

The Brigade order ran somewhat pompously. "The French have occupied Roulers, the Seventh Infantry Division is attacking Menin. The Sixth Cavalry Brigade are reconnoitring at Kilo 11. Your mission is to protect the right of the French in Roulers." The Brigade moved off early to its appointed task, and about 10.30 Rawlinson received a report that the Tenth Hussars had snatched Nedeghen, but that the Seventh Brigade on their left had become unpleasantly involved with the heads of a strong enemy column and—in common with the French Cavalry—had been pushed back. Before daybreak, Ferguson, whose Regiment was detailed for advance guard, had sent out Ashton's Squadron to cover the concentration of the Brigade. Ashton, in the rather dim light, took a wrong turning and had to be recalled and replaced by Belper. On arrival at the Hooglede-Staden-Roulers cross-roads the Second were ordered to go ahead, and a French patrol had just cheerfully told young Farquhar, who was with the leading troop, that all was clear in front, when a hot fire was opened from the railway line. It was quickly evident that the Germans were in something like force, and that the Squadron must retire; in that retirement Pemberton was killed and Anstruther gallantly, but vainly, tried to bring his body in. Ferguson, with the other two Squadrons, held the village facing east, doing all he could—and incidentally doing pretty good damage—to cover the Squadron falling back, when the enemy brought up two guns, aimed at Ferguson's maxims, but hit and set fire to some houses. This had its advantages as, shrouded in the smoke, the Regiment could withdraw to a line west of the village and south of the road by *entente* with G.O.C. Third English Cavalry Division that an English Regiment (BLUES) is posted between Most (De Ruyters) and Vyfwegen.

"It would be very useful if the Regiment would face east, thus prolonging to the south the defence of Roulers between Vyfwegen and Den Aap."

which they had come, the First Life Guards,* who had been less seriously engaged, but had lost Brocklehurst and four men wounded and one man killed, continuing the line on the north side of the road. The Germans were slow to discover this move, but eventually poured into the village. The order then came that Ashton and his Squadron should advance from farm to farm, dismounted, cutting all wire, while the other two Squadrons were to make a mounted attack on the village.

Ferguson was just on the move when a heavy fire was opened from the village, and the advance Squadron, which had got near enough to it to hear the German words of command, had to fall back. Ferguson could now only bring up Belper's Squadron to cover Ashton's retirement, but Ashton's Squadron was sadly mauled, he himself and Palmer were missing, reported killed, and it was not till a week later that news came they were prisoners. Lyon and several men were badly wounded, Corporal Black, when shot through the stomach, pluckily riding to the ambulance as though unhurt. The two Squadrons remained under heavy shell fire with such cover as a wood could afford until nearly four o'clock, when they were able, with no further casualty, to gallop out of range.

The net result of a ding-dong fight was that a strong force, probably the flank guard of an Army Corps, had been held up for seven hours, and Byng's prompt word of commendation had a genuine ring. During the afternoon the "C" Squadron of the Blues had received a certain amount of attention from the enemy's rifles, while the "B" Squadron, having, at the request of a Colonel of Cuirassiers, moved a little out of the line when the Brigade was retiring to its right, had one or two casualties, including the Duke of Roxburghe, permanently hurt.

* The Duke of Teck was returned this day sick to the base, and Brassey took over command.

It was rather flippantly said at the time that before dawn on the 20th, G.H.Q. had Aix-la-Chapelle as its objective, and that before dusk on the 21st, every nerve was being strained to ward the enemy off the Channel ports. On the night of the 19th, the mandate went forth again that the Third Cavalry Division should seize Menin, but now, an "if possible" was interpolated, and a condition affixed that the move of the First Corps must not be uncovered. The Division sallied out at 6 a.m., and stood on the defensive * from the railway half a mile south of Passchendaele to Westroosebeke where the left-hand man of the Sixth Brigade would touch the French Cavalry. In entrenching the line, the Household Cavalry had their first experience of digging, poorly equipped for this initial effort with insufficient and unsatisfactory tools, the men's bayonets having to be very gingerly used. Crowds of refugees pushed their way through the British line, but the enemy was not hard on their heels and the Cavalry was unmolested till noon. Then the rather more than rapid retrograde movement of De Mitry and his mounted troops exposed its left flank, and a new line, Zonnebeke, St. Julien, Poelcappelle, must be taken up. The good services of the First Life Guards had, however, been requisitioned. About nine o'clock, General Lawford commanding the Twenty-second Brigade, had sent a note: "There is at present a gap between the right of your line and my left. I am arranging to protect this temporarily, but will you please detail troops to fill it, and to carry on work being executed as early as possible."

* While we were in the reserve trenches, the right-hand gun of our battery fired low every third or fourth shot, and the shell hit the ground at the top of the hill only ten yards behind my troops. A fragment hit Corporal Tapsall, and inflicted a horrible wound on him. The Commanding Officer signalled back to the gunners, who did not use that particular gun again. (Diary of Sir R. Sutton.)

The reply was prompt, and two hours later Carden could report :—

“ Am in position along railway line on right of and in prolongation of C. Squadron. There was still a gap between me and the British Infantry on my right, but a Company of French troops has now filled it. I shall stay here till further orders unless compelled to retire. I have not seen the General of 22nd Infantry Brigade, but Major Shearman, 10th Hussars, is going to him, and has promised to report that I am here.”

The new line, in its turn, proved untenable. Before evening Poelcappelle became too hot for the French to hold, and the British must further conform by stepping back to Langemarck. Here Haig's First Corps, which had been hoped for all day, but not really expected till the morrow, came up. The Fourth Guards Brigade was prompt in relief, and the Division, constrained by an abortive night attack to bivouac at Friesenberg instead of billeting at Zonnebeke, was early on the 21st round about Hooze. If the line of the Fourth Corps, except for a slight retirement near Zonnebeke, was maintained during the day, praise must not be withheld from Rawlinson for his skilful employment of his Cavalry to safeguard alternately his left and right flanks, while the British Cavalry leaders may well have chuckled to hear that the German Cavalry Commander was that evening angrily superseded.

Protection rather than progress was on the morning of the 21st assigned to Byng as his *rôle* ; he was to guard the advance of the First Corps, which was moving up on his left, while Capper was bidden to improve his trenches as well as his scanty remainder of picks and shovels would allow him. But from Passchendaele, on the summit of the Ypres ridge (which had been lost the previous day), the trenches of the Twenty-second Brigade near Zonnebeke were from break of day badly enfiladed by artillery and machine-gun fire ; before 8 a.m. Capper's left was

seriously threatened by the Fifty-second Reserve Division, and Kavanagh must hurry to his help. The First Life Guards, who were ahead on the march, were quickly up, followed by the Blues, the Second Life Guards—who lost this morning Captain Montgomerie wounded, and one man killed—having to sit down under an ugly shell fire without being able themselves to shoot, as the Staffords were in their immediate front. The advent of the Brigade was a great boon to Lawford, who handsomely wrote: “I would express to the Regiments of the Brigade my thanks for the assistance they gave me, and my admiration for the way they behaved in saving what might have been a critical situation.”

Meanwhile the Second Cavalry Division was being furiously attacked by the Bavarian Cavalry and thrust back from Hollebeke, leaving a gap of a mile between that place and Zandvoorde; if the enemy had pounced upon this, the British line might have been generally compromised. In the early afternoon the advance of the First Corps enabled Rawlinson to send the Sixth Cavalry Brigade to the danger spot, while an hour later he moved the Household Troops to Voormezele to act as a reserve in case the Germans should go for the gap. In the evening, Byng took over the right of the Seventh Division line near Zandvoorde, which allowed an utterly worn-out battalion of Scots Guards to go into Divisional Reserve.

The general situation on the 22nd, when Sir John was wiring to Kitchener that the enemy was playing his last card—a theory * which was neither shared by his subordinates nor accepted by the Secretary of State, was

* Sir John's belief in an early termination to the War was enduring. “The King had half an hour's talk with French, and was glad to find him so optimistic, and practically regarding the Germans beaten,” was a message Kitchener received from Buckingham Palace on September 6th, 1915.

somewhat thus : The Seventh Division and First Corps were on three sides of an oblong east of Ypres, the French and Belgians stretching themselves along the Yser to the sea, while on the right, Allenby's cavalry, the Third Corps, Conneau's mounted troops and the Second Corps were responsible to a point west of La Bassée, where the French Tenth Army met them.

On this day the Brigade rested awhile, if it can be called rest to remain in reserve and examine anxiously such questions as to how two tired men and horses * will be asked to do the work of four. " Sat in the woods of a charming chateau, safe although under shell fire," is an entry in Ferguson's diary that morning. But this was not for long ; at two o'clock came to him the order that his regiment must lend a hand at Klein Zillebeke, and a little later he was to break up his weak Squadron, making two strong ones, and send every available man into the trenches, there to reinforce the Sixth Brigade and share with them a night of continuous musketry fire. This was Ferguson's last entry for some time. Early on the 23rd, he was on his way to the trenches with Brassey, when a shell tore a large piece out of his leg and compelled him to repair to hospital.

The next senior officer, Prince Alexander of Teck,† had been attached to the Belgian H.Q. ; Sir John French decided, sorely against his personal feelings, to detach Hugh Dawnay from the Staff and set him over his regiment.

* The horses are losing condition for want of enough water. The regiment often has to crowd into one farm, where a dirty pond is emptied by the first squadron. We get no hay, but can nearly always requisition oat straw from the farmer. (" Officer's Diary.")

† Created Earl of Athlone, 1917.

CHAPTER V

THE Household Cavalry were to have a couple of dreary days in the trenches, on the line Zandvoorde-Hollebeke road. Kavanagh was told to relieve Makins before noon on the 23rd, but the Brigadier, his staff, Brassey and Tweeddale having been hit—though only very slightly hurt—when the officers were merely having their position pointed out to them, the exchange was postponed until dusk should make things easier. The casualties in the Brigade during the forty-eight hours were not inconsiderable if they were not excessive, as the trenches were shelled all day, and fitfully fired upon during the night, while the snipers by day and night seemed, as usual, to have their finger on the trigger. It transpired, however, that there need have been no real fear of any rear attack, as the report of the German Cavalry shows that, in spite of their numerical superiority, they prudently thought the position too strong for assault. On the evening of the 25th, the Sixth Brigade resumed their places, but as they could only produce two regiments with which to relieve three, a squadron of the First Life Guards had to do another tour of twenty-four hours while their colleagues took such sleep as a very uncomfortable billet in Klein Zillebeke would allow. Here, however, a succulent scrap of information cheered them. The First Army Corps, they heard, had been attacked the preceding night five times by the enemy, who advanced in fours brandishing their rifles over their heads and shouting *Der Wacht am Rhein*. To this insult the Corps had replied by taking 600 prisoners and killing a good deal more than double that

98 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

number, while the Second Division had cleared the wood south of Zonnebeke, and recaptured their trenches.

Another item of news was that the Third Cavalry Division had been handed over to the Cavalry Corps, while the heroic defence of their position by their friends in the Seventh Division during the 24th was the theme of the moment.

The Commander-in-Chief now instructed Allenby to set afoot a forward movement in fellowship with the Seventh Division, and the Corps Commander issued orders at noon on the 26th that the First Cavalry Division should hold its right as a pivot, while the Second and Third Divisions, facing south-east and south should advance at 3 o'clock so as to converge on Houthem. The Seventh Cavalry Brigade order ran :—

The 1st Corps is advancing to-day with general objectives Becleaere-Terhand. The 7th Division is also advancing by swinging forward its left, using Kruseik as a pivot. The objective of the 3rd Division is Kortewilde. The attack will be delivered by the Brigade as follows : The Royal Horse Guards will advance from the farm $\frac{1}{4}$ mile N.E. of Chateau at such time as to be level with the Chateau at 3 p.m. They will then advance on Kortewilde with the right on the main stream running down the valley. The 1st Life Guards will advance from the Chateau at 3 p.m., their right on the railway, their left on the stream. Machine-gun 1st Life Guards to be on railway. 2nd Life Guards will be in reserve at the Chateau. These attacks will be carried out dismounted, and lead horses will be left near the starting point.

Here was an afternoon's programme apparently pregnant with incident, but before Byng could bend himself towards Gough, he heard of the parlous—if not perilous—circumstances of the Seventh Division due to a violent attack on Kruiseecke, and he secured Allenby's consent to suspend the movement. At 3.30 came an urgent request from Capper, who never asked for aid till his needs were really pressing. Could the Cavalry help to cover the forced retirement of the Twentieth Brigade? Byng was more than willing to help, but his own front was so wide,

and his rifles so few, that he could only spare a regiment for what he promised as a demonstration, but which proved to be something more. The Royal Horse Guards were told off to relieve the pressure on the Seventh Division, and in pursuance of their instructions, moved mounted behind the line eastwards to Zandvoorde. There Alastair Ker dismounted his Squadron on the ridge and opened fire, while the other two squadrons galloped on further east, and valuably extended the front to the right, thus flanking the German advance. The enemy balked of his stroke, turned viciously on the Blues, but before his ponderous attentions could develop, the light failed and Wilson could withdraw his Regiment, having done at least all that had been asked of him, with the loss of 8 men and 25 horses. The Divisional General was open-mouthed in approval,* of which Alastair Ker gained a special word, Trooper Levin was awarded the D.C.M. for special gallantry, and the Regiment would have been flattered to know that their bit of business was the only entry in the enemy's record of the British Cavalry operations for the day.†

* Ten years later Lord Haig alluded to the occasion when the Blues by bold and rapid movement across the front of two German Cavalry Regiments, too startled to interfere, were able to extricate the Twentieth Infantry Brigade from Kruiseecke.

†

October 26th.

The Blues were ordered to make a mounted demonstration towards Kruiseecke. The Squadrons were rallied as quickly as possible, and we went off at a gallop towards the ridge, C Squadron leading. By this time it was getting dusk, and just as well for us that it was. We rode on to the crest between two trenches held by Hugh Grosvenor's Squadron, and here the Germans spotted us, and we came in for a hail of shrapnel and bullets. My horse was hit in the shoulder, and I got into a trench in which were Hugh Grosvenor and Gerry Ward. They seemed surprised at our selecting this spot for a point-to-point, as they can't put their heads out of the trenches without being shot at; I got out and shot my horse with a revolver. On reaching the crest we rode a left-handed course for a short distance. Alastair's horse was shot, and eventually Dick Molyneux rallied the Squadron and took them out of

The line for which the Household Brigade was to be responsible for the next days rested on the forward slope of the ridge, and in respect of trenches had little to recommend it. These, of the narrow type of the period, were in short sections, very far apart, with no communication laterally or from behind, and so visible and vulnerable as to render it impossible to bring up men or material except at night. Time, opportunity, and tools had been alike lacking to place them in serviceable communication or state of defence, while every hour an average of 120 shells was addressed to them.

On the 27th Capper had again to beckon to Kavanagh, and two troops of the First Life Guards and a squadron of the Second were told to give a hand to the Twenty-second Brigade east of Zandvoorde, though on their arrival it was found that no more than one squadron of the Second could be accommodated. Then it had been arranged that on the 29th the First Life Guards should be relieved at dusk from the Sixth Brigade. Once more, however, the mounted men must help their sorely-tried infantry colleagues. Support was immediately required for the First Corps; Makins must furnish it, and Brassey's squadrons must share in the sacrifice of the morrow.

action, D Squadron being blocked by a very high fence and wire. D and B dismounted and opened a covering fire. The result of our little manoeuvre seems to have been that the Germans thought the whole Cavalry Corps was behind us, ready to gallop their trenches, and turned every available gun on to the valley behind us. This was exactly what was wanted, as it relieved the pressure on the Twentieth Brigade. By now it was quite dark, the firing stopped, and all rode back to our billets *via* Pig Farm. Otto and his one gun are still in the trenches. There are only three machine guns left in the Brigade. Thirty horses were killed in our little demonstration, but the human casualties, considering the fire we drew, were small. Newcombe having been hit in the eye two days ago, Harradine becomes R.C.M.

[Diary of an Officer.]

Dawn on October 30th found the Allied Commanders in the north unaware of the meaning of the enemy's movements that had been heard in the night, but painfully aware of the thinness of the British line. The three Cavalry divisions, backed up by a couple of Indian battalions, were holding a front nearly nine miles long with squadrons parading about 80 rifles apiece, and with just their horse artillery batteries and one section of old 6-inch howitzers to support them. Byng had posted one squadron of the Royals at Hollebeke Chateau, and sent the rest of his Sixth Brigade into Divisional reserve at Klein Zillebeke. The remainder of his front he gave in charge to Kavanagh, who would place his left hand in Lawford's right. The German High Command had decided that the break-through fixed for this day must, and would, be decisive. The All-Highest was to arrive at Prince Ruprecht's headquarters on the 31st, to congratulate his troops on "settling for ever with the centuries-long struggle," and the semi-hysterical order for the day had for its concluding phrase, "We will finish with the British, Indians, Moroccans and other trash, feeble adversaries, who surrender in great numbers if they are attacked with vigour." It would almost seem as if Fabeck had determined to inaugurate his day with the destruction of the Life Guards. In his assault on Zandvoorde, to which he dedicated most of his 260 heavy guns, fire was poured on their trenches, and on the zone immediately behind them, for an hour and a quarter—from 6.45 till 8 o'clock. Then the Thirty-ninth Division and three Jaeger battalions hurled themselves against the Household Cavalry, whose battle order from right to left was: Squadron First Life Guards; Squadron Second Life Guards; Machine Guns; Royal Horse Guards; Squadron First Life Guards; Squadron Second Life Guards. So fierce and so concentrated had been the gun-fire that it may well have

appeared to Kavanagh as if annihilation or retreat were the only alternatives, and an order was actually issued for a second line to be manned. With the ferocious onrush of the German footmen in overwhelming numbers, a retirement to this position was imperative. The movement behind the Sixth Brigade was calmly effected by the squadrons on the right—who were subsequently held ready to reinforce successively the Greys and the Blues ; but Grosvenor's and Vandeleur's squadrons, on the left, with Worsley's machine gun section *—which had been left alongside of them the previous night—suffered almost total extinction,† only a few prisoners being accounted for.‡ At no time was mercy a property of the German troops, and contemporary evidence went to throw a lurid light on special misdeeds to injured men left out. Every effort was made to ascertain if anything were known of the missing. To the mother of one of the officers whose frequent guest the Kaiser had been, and who asked for any scrap of comfort, there came a callous and un-

* One of the machine guns of the First Life Guards had jammed and was useless, and Worsley, after seven days of ceaseless strain in the trenches, was asked by the Brigade Major to remain on for a further short spell of duty. "All in the days' work" was the smiling reply of a young officer from whose lips a smile scarcely ever seemed to fade. Hugh Grosvenor and Gerald Ward, who perished side by side, were brothers-in-law as well as brother officers.

† Surgeon-Major Pares, who remained on the ridge to the bitter end, was wounded as he turned to leave, but managed to scramble away.

‡

October 30th.

"After an ominously quiet night, the enemy began at 7 a.m. to open a terrific fire against the ridge, and H. E. and big shrapnel burst round the support trenches and Echelon A. Willie Naper was limbered up and away before much harm was done. We retired slowly up the hill to Klein Zillebeke through the Sixth Brigade which occupied the reserve trenches. Pickles and five of his troops were buried in their trench. He was got out, but I am afraid killed afterwards. Otto and most of his M.G. section are missing, also Hugh Grosvenor's and Alex. Vandeleur's. Not one man has come in who knows what happened to them."

[Diary of an Officer in the Blues.]



mannerly reply.* The move of the Seventh Brigade to their support line in the Valley of the Basseville Stream was covered by two of Lawford's battalions, who were ordered, if possible, to regain Zandvoorde ; Byng giving the same prescription to two of Makins' regiments. For this purpose Allenby's offer of Bulkeley-Johnson's detachment of three regiments was accepted, and these were disposed south of the Sixth Brigade, who for a little while nourished the hope of a counter-attack from the south-west on the strip of ground lost in the morning. If this had been possible, the Blues would have been alongside of the Royals, whom in the afternoon they reinforced and replenished with ammunition. On the way to them Harrison was wounded in the head, and Angus McIntosh was shot in the lung, an injury from which he never recovered, and to which his death a few years later in Canada can be directly traced.

At 6 a.m. the trench taken over on the 28th by Lambton's troop was bombarded, and with the third shell was blown in, Lambton himself and the greater part of his men being blown into eternity. One of the few survivors, Corporal of Horse Meach, having reported the disaster at Regimental Headquarters, returned with Corporal Hills to where the trench had been to fire a few last shots. In trying to get away they were both wounded and pounced upon by a group of Germans. One of these worthies deliberately shot Hills through the head, and would have repeated the brutality with Meach but for the intervention of his officer, who mistook a Corporal of Horse for a Captain, and preferred to drag away his prisoner limping from a horrible injury to his leg.

* Four months later the W.O. could issue a certificate, secured through the American Embassy, that Lord Worsley had been buried south of Zandvoorde ; in September, 1921, his body was exhumed and finally laid to rest in the cemetery at Ypres.

For the Seventh Brigade there was a night of fitful sleep, embittered by the thought of friends and comrades who had utterly and irrevocably vanished, many of them blown into space; a few—the more unhappy few—to endure their last moments in the vile grasp of their captors. Then came a day of uneasy movement.

October 31st may take rank as one of the most fateful days of the War, anyhow so far as the tenure of the Ypres Salient, with the safeguarding of the old town, was concerned. It was a day of deepest anxiety for Haig, and for Haig's Corps Byng was to consider his command as a mobile reserve.

The seizure of Gheluveld was the midday cup offered to the Kaiser who had adventured himself for a few hours to a point four miles south of Messines; the draught was to be dashed from his lips before he could drain it, by the superb gallantry of the Worcesters. For hours the battle raged, and at the darkest moment—a moment which, however, quickly cleared—it would seem as if the line marked out less than 2,000 yards from the walls at Ypres must be taken up.

The Second Cavalry Division also on the 31st was to suffer in some degree what the Third had endured on the 30th. Its line was about three and a half miles long, and from 6 a.m. it was heavily shelled, its trenches constantly blown in and the occupants buried in the *debris*. Gough had on loan the Eighteenth Hussars, the London Scottish and one and a half Indian battalions; he still had against him five times his numerical strength. Towards noon, Bingham's Brigade and the London Scottish were called away to help de Lisle in beating off the attack on Messines; their help, which could not be refused, might have dangerously crippled Gough but for the timely arrival at his side of Maison Rouge's cuirassiers and of

the two squadrons of the First Life Guards. Brassey * had reached St. Eloi, where was the Third Cavalry Brigade, when there came an urgent call to hurry to the Fourth Hussars on the line south of the canal, near Hollebeke. Here, in deference to a mandate from Allenby, which conflicted with—but overrode—a divisional order, the First Life Guards spent a fairly quiet night, while the rest of the Brigade billeted at V. M—,† De Lisle planting his feet from the Douve to Messines, and Gough stretching himself to the Comine Canal.

“*Attaquez et encore attaquez !*” was Foch’s almost unvarying refrain. There had been something of a repulse ; all the more reason for an attack, and on November 1st six Battalions of the Thirty-second Division and part of the Ninth Corps were to be in the van. “The Ninth French Corps will take the offensive to-morrow on our left ; the British Cavalry will do the same with its left directed on Hollebeke and then on Zandvoorde,” was Haig’s spirited order.

The telegram from G.H.Q. to the War Office on the night of the 31st was somewhat colourless ; ground had been lost which the morrow might regain, ammunition was required with immediate urgency, and a computation—not quite accurate or adequate—was made of the bulky German force which had just faced seven Infantry and three Cavalry Divisions. Sir John knew that the War Secretary—with the French Ambassador—was crossing that night to meet at Dunkirk the French President, Joffre and Foch. The conference was of some historic interest, as the French high authorities then accepted and

* Brassey was wounded in the afternoon and had to hand over his command to Stanley, who, a few weeks later, received the D.S.O.

† A shell wrecked one of the billets and killed Trooper Stunt of the Blues, who the day before had been recommended for a specially gallant act.

proceeded to act upon Kitchener's estimate of the duration of the War. "Three years if the Russians fight on, nearly five if they go out," was the unpalatable pronouncement which proved to be terribly true. The meeting was at first pervaded by a rather drab colour ; the British Commander-in-Chief was unable to attend it, but the report he sent by two of his staff could not but reflect his dire anxiety ; Poincaré and Joffre were acutely alive to the proximity of the Germans to Paris, and to the powerful engines of war which they might soon bring to bear upon it. Foch, who arrived late, brought his indomitable enthusiasm to bear upon the occasion. "*Qui-est-ce-qui dit que la bataille d'Ypres sera perdue. Pas moi, et tout cas. Nous sommes surs de gagner.*" The gallant Frenchman was as good as his word. If the French counter-attacks on November 1st could make but little progress, the boldness of Foch's troops induced in the enemy the belief that he had been greatly strengthened in men, and not even the adjurations of the Kaiser, who had tiptoed towards Courtrai, could put the required vim into the offensive of the Twenty-seventh Reserve Corps to recover Gheluveld.

November 6th was to be another critical day for Ypres ; it was to test anew the fighting qualities of the Household Cavalry. Three days earlier, the German Supreme Command had again registered the determination to push the assault of the town to a decision ; their hitherto failure they attributed not only to the strongly entrenched position of the Allies, but to their "continual bringing up of fresh reinforcements." The latter benefit could scarcely be attributed to the Seventh Cavalry Brigade, whose report on the 5th showed that they were able to muster barely 600 rifles.

That Prince Rupprecht had set his teeth and sworn to break through, that he had piled gun upon gun on Fabeck

and filled him up with four more divisions, and that late on the 4th he had received the Imperial mandate to make a breach immediately north of the Commine-Ypres Canal, was information which apparently had not reached G.H.Q. on the morning of the 5th,* as in an early conference at Bailleul, Sir John could discuss with his Corps Commanders the more agreeable topics of the relief of the Seventh Division to be effected that day,† and the matter of soldiers' leave during the coming winter.

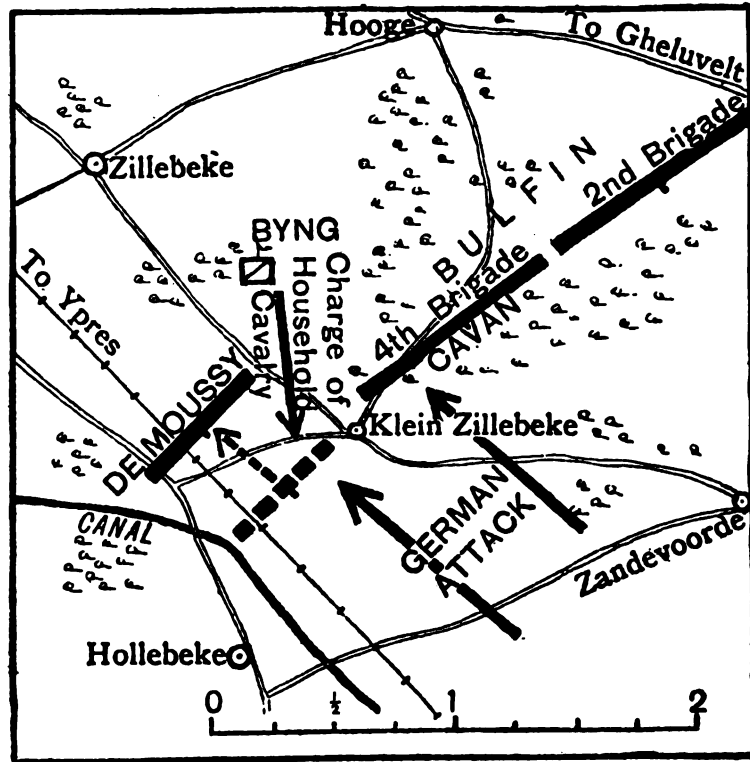
The morning of the 6th went badly for the French near the Commine Canal. General Olissi's contingent—south of it—was thrust back, and to add to his trouble two Chasseur battalions were seized with panic, abandoned nearly a mile of ground, and required his forcible attentions to induce them to recover what they had thrown away. North of the Canal General Moussy, with five battalions and two groups of artillery, and Lord Cavan on his left shared a heavy and sustained bombardment. Some time before noon two French companies were practically exterminated when on their way to relieve two others which were wholly exhausted, while by noon the effect of the shelling on the Irish Guards and Second Grenadier Guards was little short of disastrous. Two hours later Moussy's right flank having been uncovered by Olissi's mishap, four German columns were able to pierce his front in three places, and his troops, taken by surprise and suffering atrociously, fell back to the outskirts of Zillebeke. The enemy poured exultantly into the gap thus formed—a gap to be woefully widened by the destruction of one company of Irish Guards, and the enforced retreat of another to its support trenches. It

* An appendix to the intelligence summary issued on the 6th shows that by the preceding night the renewed and immediate danger was realised.

† The Twenty-second Brigade was kept in corps reserve, and on the 7th was to make yet another tremendous, and triumphant, effort.

108 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

would seem as if a path had really been laid for an insolent German entrance into Ypres ; the path was to be barred and closed by the British Sovereign's Bodyguard. The Seventh Cavalry Brigade—which by now had been dubbed the “ Fire Brigade ”—as they were incessantly turning out for some alarm—had spent an uncomfortable



The Fight at Klein Zillebeke, November 6th.

morning (as, indeed, they had spent two uncomfortable days) in Sanctuary Wood, when, about three o'clock, the call for action came to them. Cavan's call had in it a note much deeper than alarm, and Kavanagh hurried his troops at top speed along the Zillebeke road to the point where their presence and prowess were imperatively needed, directing them across the line of the French retreat. Just short of Zwarteele the Brigade was halted

on its haunches, and a squadron of the Blues was detached to cover its right. The First and Second Life Guards and the remainder of the Blues were then rapidly dismounted, deployed, and given the simple, but sufficient, order to arrest the advance of the Germans and snatch Zwarteele from their grip. The line—the Second Life Guards on the right, the First Life Guards on the left and the Blues in their immediate rear—moved at the double up to the wood at Zwarteele, and met the Germans emerging from it, and drove them back through it at the point of the bayonet. The spirit of the Household Cavalry was infectious; the French quickly took heart of grace, shook themselves up, sent for every cook and camp follower to fill their ranks, and cheerfully followed Moussy, who led them up on Kavanagh's right, their energy being further stimulated by one of their few surviving officers who rushed hither and thither firing his revolver at nothing in particular, and punctuating his shots with shouts of "En avant!"

Gerard, Northampton and Edwin Brassey were wounded almost at once; the gallant Alexis de Gunzburg—a non-combatant only in name—was killed when crossing the road to the support trenches, and before the threshold of the wood could be reached the Blues had lost their Colonel. A borrowed rifle in his hand, a cheery laugh bubbling up, Gordon Wilson was a few feet ahead of his men when a bullet pierced his brain, and without word or moan he sank to the ground.* "I have heard many instances of his glorious gallantry. It is something to know that he was killed at the head of his

* It was nearly dark, and while I was standing with General Kavanagh a Frenchman told me that there was an English officer lying dead about 100 yards in front of our trench. I took two men and we carried him back to a house and found it was the Colonel. Meyrick has recommended Corporal Edwards for his conduct. (Diary of Captain Foster.)

magnificent Regiment which he himself did so much to make." So ran the simple message of the Commander-in-Chief, and no better or truer euge could have been spoken. Tweedmouth was close at hand to take charge of the Regiment, to send George Meyrick on to the mound, later famous as Hill 60, and get communication with the French on the right, to send Anglesey to hold a farm in advance of the French trenches, and to take himself and the rest of his men into the thick of the *mêlée* in which by now English, French and Germans were at frenzied grip.

While the First Life Guards moved forward on the left, Dawnay led his regiment—and led it in the sense that he tried to keep 50 yards ahead of it—on the right, through the village just beyond which O'Neill was killed. Dawnay took personal charge of his squadron, and, pressing on through some outlying houses, found in a garden a trench which had been evacuated by the French. A view taken from this slender shelter showed the enemy pouring over from the other side of the railway, and, moving with his two squadrons to the right, Dawnay took up a position by the side of a raised road to open fire on the advancing hordes. Here he was joined by Jobson, who reported Sandys and others wounded, and who was greeted with the joyous words, "This is seeing life!" Hardly had the words passed his lips when there came the crashing shot which sealed those lips for ever. The accursed wound, which lodged in one of the finest brains in the British Army, was mortal, and although for a while breath was not extinct, the efforts of Corporal-Major Mommery and others to revive consciousness were unavailing; darkness was gathering, the casualties were multiplying, the enemy in increasing strength was not to be denied, and Jobson must leave the lifeless body with others around him, and retire with

such men as he could gather to the further edge of the woods.* But the Seventh Cavalry Brigade had done its work. "Sir Douglas Haig wishes to thank General Kavanagh for the splendid support given to the Infantry to-day at a very critical moment." So ran a message from the Corps Commander to whom the Commander-in-Chief had wired : "Please thank Cavan and Kavanagh on my behalf for the help they have given to the French."

Who with a toward or untoward lot,
Prosperous or adverse, to his wish or not—
Plays, in the many games of life, that one
Where what he most doth value must be won :
Whom neither shape of danger can dismay
Nor thought of tender happiness betray ;
Who, not content that former worth stand fast,
Looks forward persevering to the last,
From well to better, daily self surpast :

So Wordsworth painted the Happy Warrior. Was he not also pencilling Hugh Dawnay and many of his comrades who died for the cause that day ?

At night General Lomax sent some of the Third Infantry Brigade to relieve the Household Cavalry, but the Gloucester Regiment was numerically too weak to take over Brassey's ground, and while the Second Life Guards and Blues bivouacked half a mile west by south of Zillebeke, the First Life Guards had to stand fast until the welcome arrival early the next morning of some of the Royal Sussex and Royal Munster Fusiliers and a few kindly souls of the Irish Guards.

Torrie—Dawnay's successor—and Tweedmouth were before dawn on the 7th at a point where, if needed, they could quickly support the Infantry, who were commissioned to recover the ground lost at Klein Zillebeke. By eight

* An attempt at night by Corporal-of-Horse Glyn to recover the body failed ; ten years later it was officially identified, and there was evidence of decent sepulture at Harlebeke near Courtrai.

o'clock Cavan and Lawford had done all that could humanly be done in this direction, and the Blues and Second Life Guards could rejoin the First Life Guards in their bivouac, to read and ruminate over the messages of eulogy which were already in Kavanagh's hands. The Brigade was to have a week-end at Verbranden Molen. The billets were nasty, Verloren Hoek—the farm allotted to the Blues, the owner of which bore a curious facial resemblance to the Duke of Wellington—amply justified its name of "Mud Farm"; the weather was not too kind, and the food was a little sketchy, but it was a comparative rest—indeed, so quiet was the Sunday that it was possible—and characteristic—to have a short religious service. For three days from the 7th the German attack slackened to something like suspense; then in frenzied fury the Kaiser drove—the Kaiser never led—the Prussian Guards against the hated English. The Prussian Guards were to meet their masters. On November 11th there hung upon a handful of men the destinies of Europe; that handful of men formed the British line and when the night shadows fell across their ground the British line, bleeding but unbroken, had conquered. Monday, the 9th, brought the Brigade back—but only for a night—into the trenches to help out their comrades of the Sixth Brigade. These trenches, however, although in some disrepair, differed sharply from the miserable makeshifts at Zandvoorde; they were well sited, the occupants were not exposed to the constant gaze of their *vis-à-vis*, a large legacy of ammunition had been left, and altogether a cheerful account could be given of them to the Royals who took them over the following night.

The Composite Regiment had been allowed four days' rest—in the strictly technical sense of the word—from November 3rd at Fontaine Hoek, just west of the Netiren-

Bailleul road, when they took over a strip of the front at Walverghem. On their way to this duty they were caught in Neuve Eglise by some cleverly-directed shells, and Corporal Coxhead, a popular N.C.O. of the Second Life Guards, was among the mortally hurt. The next two days of din and dust marked the final appearance of the Composite Regiment as an entity. On the afternoon of the 11th, Bowlby, who had just assumed charge from Gurney—returned sick, despite his protests, to England—marched to Verloren Hoek, where in pitch darkness, torrents of rain, squalls of wind, and a foot of mud, the Household Cavalry Regiment was absorbed into the Household Cavalry Brigade.

Despite the unhealthy conditions, it was a happy tryst ; there was much to tell, and much to be told. Life on the retreat from Mons and on the Aisne had to be set against the experience on the Ypres salients ; both had been brimful of incident and intense with interest ; from both points of view it had to be admitted that the fizz and fun of war was apt to evaporate when the Germans had to be reckoned with.

Scarcely, however, had the remnant of the Seventh Cavalry Brigade and all that was left of the Household Cavalry Regiment shaken hands with one another and shaken down together, when a break-up was ordained, and the Brigade and Regiment as units ceased to exist. The yeomanry were now beginning to arrive, and were certain to go far ; in courage and energy and flair they would find no superior in the field. But their technique—from lack of continuous training—might prove a little less perfect, and it was thought judicious, at least for a while, to blend them with regular troops. The Blues must therefore be subtracted from Kavanagh's command,*

*

*" November 20th.**" Before your Regiment leaves the Brigade under my command*

H.C.

1

replaced by the Essex Yeomanry, and translated to the Eighth Cavalry Brigade, where, under Bulkeley-Johnson, they were to find themselves in happy company with the Tenth Hussars and Leicester Yeomanry.

Before its dissolution the Household Cavalry Brigade had one more duty assigned to it. While the Prussian Guards were venting their impotent fury against the British line, Byng stationed his Cavalry at Hooze, to be moved quickly wherever required. But the line made no call upon them ; the infantry stood knee-deep in mud and mire, but with face set like a flint ; its own heroism was sufficient unto the day—and it sufficed to set a term to the first Battle of Ypres.

Surely now there would be some rest, some relief for weary limbs from the daily round of squatting in unhealthy trenches or trudging between them and unsavoury billets ; some respite for aching heads from the scream of shells, some relaxation of nerves strained almost to snapping point. On the 16th the genial Divisional General appeared at Brigade Headquarters with a delightful message. Foch—whose name was just beginning to rise upon every lip—had cheerfully agreed to line with his brave poilus the ground held by the British Cavalry who were to go back into real billets. Hazebrouck, it was said, would be the lodging both of Life Guards and Blues, and after Zandvoorde and Zwarteleen, Hazebrouck sounded like a haven of peace, and better still—only this was not to be mentioned for the moment—there was almost a certainty of a modicum of leave. Judged by time, it was little more than a month since the Household Cavalry had sailed from Southampton ; into

to-morrow, I want to tell you all how sorry I am to lose you. All of you, from your gallant late Colonel and yourself downwards, have always played the game so gallantly and loyally, and by your action have contributed so materially to any success we have had, that it is with the greatest regret I part with you now." (Kavanagh to Tweedmouth).

that month had been crowded happenings to colour a lifetime. They had marched and toiled and died ; many had been hurt, many had been laid low to linger painfully for Death's kind touch. But the will to win had been as wine in their veins ; the fight, however fierce, could have but one end. The discipline of war had bound together Life Guards and Blues with those who had been Lancers and Dragoons and Hussars ; friendships had been formed which neither shot nor shell could shatter—friendships unthought of in the old careless days, born of strain and stress, and often sealed with blood. And the joy of life had never been quenched ; for any trouble there had been the wholesome medicine of laughter ; in war, comedy and tragedy are closely interlaced, and mirth mocks at the very heels of misery. Even now, before the short spell of rest had come, the casualty list was to have another page of entries, for on the 17th and 18th the Life Guards in their trenches were to endure the ugly attentions of some specially vicious Jack Johnsons, and on the 19th a Squadron of the Blues was heavily shelled at Halte and shed twenty-two men, as well as George Meyrick, the Squadron Leader. Then all that was left of the Brigade was called back from the blood-soaked salient into the rest area. Snow lay white upon the fields and slushed the roads, and through the grey of early winter in dark silhouette, a column of route moved across the land which was being laid desolate. They rode a little heavily—a line of tired and dirty men on lean and sorry horses, with their clothes hanging about them and shod in broken, leaky boots—and away in old London the fervid patriot would ask the sentry of the King's Life Guard why he did not join a fighting Regiment.*

* Towards the close of the War, when England was being combed for the last man, uncomplimentary remarks were being passed in certain quarters about the King's Life Guards. The uninformed, not unnaturally perhaps, imagined that the whole of the men comprising

116 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

The battle was over ; both armies were facing each other in dull discontent, but with dogged determination. What of the British Expeditionary Force—the head of the vast spear which was being fashioned at home ? Just a remnant of weary men, many of them sick, but refusing to “ go sick,” some with the madness of tortured nerves staring from their eyes, begrimed and covered with the vermin which thrives in filth, with boys to command Regiments,* and young Captains to lead Brigades, with nothing to show for their story of heroism but just the unbroken line and the thought that they had perhaps bequeathed to their country an heirloom of military achievement.

And Fritz—Fritz, too, had learnt that the clever soldier takes a while to train, and the stupid soldier a good deal longer, but that to kill a soldier, be he clever or stupid, is the work of an instant. In strategy, the initiative had lain with his side ; the Germans had out-manned and out-gunned immeasurably their slender enemy, their stores of ammunition had seemed at first inexhaustible, the War Lord was still as Lucifer in his pride and was already planning his birthday treat.† But the Reserve Regiments were finding the Guard. For the first time in history the Household Cavalry condescended to what may have smacked of advertisement. A statement was issued to the Press to the effect that the King’s Life Guard was found by a very small body of N.C.O.’s and men, all of whom were unfit for service overseas, they either having been invalided home from the front, or being re-enlisted men unable to serve abroad.

To emphasise the true happenings, the War Office gave special sanction for an issue of the recently designed Mons Star to those, nearly all, of the Guard who were entitled to it. And here was the first issue of the medal to any troops.

* On October 16th, when the battle had scarcely begun, Sir John spoke of putting Reserve Captains under the command of Regular Subalterns.

† A little later the War Secretary telegraphed to the C.-in-C. that Sir Edward Grey heard from a neutral and reliable source that an attack was being planned to occur on the Kaiser’s birthday.



strategy, guns, and men had somehow just failed him, and for the moment he must withdraw his Battalions and in sheer lust of destruction set his guns to batter down the fair city which had dumbly defied him.

Had the sense of defeat already gripped him? Was the icy conviction stealing down his spine that perhaps, after all, Gott was not "mit uns"? Four years must spell out their sorrowful story before the Allied Commanders could review, and report their finished work, but at the end of the first Battle of Ypres the scientific German High Command must have surely guessed what the issue of the war would be. The war of movement was already over; just where the British Army stood in 1914 to fight and foil their country's enemy, the British Army stood four years later to force that enemy into flight.

APPENDIX TO CHAPTER V

A CRITICAL CHARGE

From all the confused welter along those forty miles of front that went on day after day, one other incident besides the Worcesters can be selected as illustrating the character of the fighting—the charge of the Household Brigade, six days later, farther to the right of the line, which some authorities consider more brilliant and no less crucial than the incident of the Worcesters.

Lord Cavan is generally, but mistakenly, credited with having given the order for this attack. Cavan had had command of the Fourth Guards Brigade of the Second Division, but two of his battalions—the Second Grenadier and First Irish Guards—had, as we have seen, been drafted into the Divisional Reserve; and it was in command of these two detached battalions, in combination with the First K.R.R. and three companies of the Royal Berkshires, that Cavan was sent down—"lent" as the phrase was—to help Bulfin, who commanded the Second Brigade (First Division) near Klein Zillebeke, where the situation was critical. When Bulfin was wounded Cavan succeeded to his command, and his two united brigades were now known as "Cavan's Force," and had practically the status of a division.

A detachment of French troops, under Moncey, held a short stretch of trenches on Cavan's right, but extremely heavy attacks on the morning of November 6th forced them to give way, and on the open

118 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

flank of the Irish Guards the enemy was again pushing through with nothing to check him. To try to stop the gap Haig sent Kavanagh with troops of the Household Brigade. Cavan, knowing every inch of the ground, was able to advise how best the troops could advance to the attack without exposing themselves. The attack, most gallantly delivered (as in the case of the Worcesters, with the bayonet on the victorious enemy's right flank) was entirely successful ; too successful, alas ! for, as brave men will, after the attackers had won back the lost trenches, they pushed on against the main German positions. Then it was that that "glorious fellow," Hugh Dawnay, commanding the Second Life Guards, Gordon Wilson, commanding the Blues, with other gallant men who could ill be spared, were killed. But the line which they restored held without afterwards yielding a yard till the end of the battle fifteen days later.

[From *The Times* newspaper, November, 1924.]

CHAPTER VI

WITH the end of the year came one of the fitful intervals of comparative quiet, and at Christmas, here and there along the front, hands were stretched out across No-Man's Land, a gesture which the British Commander-in-Chief first winked at, and then heavily frowned on. There was indeed need to give pause for both sides. Germany required a moment to gulp down her disappointment and remodel her war plan, her original maleficent scheme having been frustrated by an exhibition of dogged determination over which she might well be rubbing her eyes. For the Allies, and especially for Great Britain, the question of man-power was, and for many months would be, acute, and until the Kitchener Armies could make their way into the field every casualty was of consequence. Through January the Household Cavalry were busy with squadron, regimental, and brigade schemes, to which was super-added the specialised training which would play so great a part later on ; a reserve of machine gunners was created and bombing squads formed. It was also evidently realised that methods of supply and administration would have to be, and were being, overhauled to enable the Expeditionary Force to carry through its work successfully. Of the many comforts which were eventually distributed with a generosity which went to the edge of profusion, perhaps none was more appreciated than the hot baths which were now being instituted behind the lines, and the diary of a

Second Life Guardsman, who records, " Hot bath in a brewery at least once a month," has one of its happiest entries. On January 27th, 1915, the three regiments were inspected, dismounted, by the Commander-in-Chief. He expressed himself as something more than satisfied that troops who had endured so much in the last month could so entirely retain their pre-war smartness of appearance. He spoke to the Second Life Guards of the loss which the British Army and he himself, as well as the Regiment, had sustained by the death of Hugh Dawnay, and in an aside to the Brigadier he remarked that he was " pleasantly surprised " at the condition of the horses.

For a couple of months the Blues enjoyed one of their most agreeable billets in Lynde, with Regimental Headquarters in the brewery, and with a stream of friends passing through a place which seemed to lead everywhere. " Lynde is on rather high ground," notes one of the officers, " and the fields are comparatively dry. It is quite a grass country, and the only place where I have seen stake and bound fences which would do credit to Leicestershire. Michael Wemyss and Philipps have made it easier to ride about by larking over the country every day and making gaps in all the fences." Within a few months Philipps, the skilled rider, would have mounted his horse for the last time, Michael Wemyss would have been badly hurt, and the writer of the note would have been maimed for life.

The Third Cavalry Division was ordered on February 3rd to take over a sector of line from the French in the Ypres district, and was organised in two reliefs for this purpose. The troops to find the first relief comprised the whole of the Seventh Cavalry Brigade (First Life Guards, Second Life Guards, Leicester Yeomanry), together with the Royal Horse Guards and half the Essex Yeomanry.

The Sixth Cavalry Brigade, with the Tenth Royal Hussars and the remainder of the Essex men, formed the second line.* The lines were in a parlous state. The Frenchmen (the Seventy-seventh Regiment of Infantry) had done what they could (Colonel Ferguson describes them as "most obliging"), but the trenches were in many places knee-deep in water. Before the troops moved up all boots and legs were treated with whale oil, but several cases of frostbite were incurred nevertheless. It was found that the French had contented themselves with firing through loopholes. A fire step had to be constructed to enable our men to fire over the parapet in accordance with the British practice.

"A remarkable feature of the position," wrote Captain E. H. Wyndham, Adjutant of the First Life Guards, "due to the fact that the trenches were originally part of the German line, was an old communication trench, running from the centre of the line, straight into the German lines. At night small parties of the enemy were able to creep up this to within a few yards of our position and cut wire. It was only when pistols and flares were issued out, on Feb. 6th, that this trouble could be satisfactorily dealt with."

Part of the position, furthermore, was under enfilade fire, but in spite of all these drawbacks, C.Os. were for once able to record that casualties were quite remarkably few.

By mid-February Sir John French had made his arrangements for a British manœuvre which was to precede the concerted attack Joffre had designed for the early spring,† and on March 9th Byng expounded to the senior officers the plan of attack on Neuve Chapelle.

* 19th February. Brigade was relieved, billeted in Ypres, and bathed at the Ecole de Bienfaisance; the billets that day were less healthy than the trenches, as the Bosch had brought up a howitzer to bear on the town, and, although L.G. escaped damage, a good deal of hurt was done to civilians, several children being killed. (Diary of an officer.)

† The idea was that Sir John should relieve Joffre's troops in Flanders, that Foch, who had charge of the French Armies in the

For three days the Seventh and Eighth Cavalry Brigades stood to from long before dawn to long after dusk, saddled up and in eager expectation. There was a succession of abortive orders, each raising the hope that the Cavalry were going to "get at them"; there was some hurried movements of small parties, but then the firing died sullenly down, and the Battle of Neuve Chapelle was over; Neuve Chapelle, where so much had been hoped for, where so little was accomplished, and where in less than three days as much ammunition had been fired off as was expended through the whole South African War. While the battle was swaying Ferguson * was in charge of the Brigade. He had recovered from his wound. Two months later he was to be wounded again and, renewing his youth like the eagle, would again return to the fray. His father had commanded the Regiment, his eldest boy three years later was to die in it; atavism was surely here asserting itself.

For a week the Brigades remained as mobile reserve for the First Army round Merville, after which training was again resumed and men were initiated into the mysteries of bombing, trench mortar work, and wire entanglements.

In March the Household Cavalry were to lose an old and trusted friend, as Kavanagh was taking over the Second Cavalry Division on his road to the Cavalry Corps; he was difficult to replace, but he was admirably succeeded by Brigadier-General Kennedy, a keen and skilful officer of the Third Hussars.

The March disappointment of Neuve Chapelle was

north, should use these troops to reinforce the French on our right, and "go for" Vimy Ridge, the British to attack concurrently north of La Bassée Canal, and Joffre to make an inroad east of Rheims.

* I have men of twenty-four different units in my ranks, so uniformity is difficult to attain. (Ferguson's diary.)

followed by the April, and scarcely less expensive, disappointment of Hill 60, and next by the unforgettable display of German ferocity in the form of poison gas, the waves of which were first discharged on April 22nd, and formed the hideous prologue to the second Battle of Ypres.

On May 12th the Twenty-eighth Division—worn to a skeleton—went into reserve and was replaced by the First and Third Cavalry Divisions under General De Lisle. The line was now held from left to right by the Twelfth Brigade, the Eleventh Brigade, and a battalion from the Tenth Brigade to a point north-east of Verlorenhoek. The First Cavalry Division touched the Ruhr railway with the Third Division from the railway to the Bellewarde Lake. The line could boast of no natural advantages, and the trenches were for the most part of recent improvisation. That evening the cavalry took up their ground, the First Division line from left to right being held by the First and Second Brigades. The line of the Third Division was entrusted to the Sixth and Seventh Brigades, with the Eighth Brigade in reserve.

The Third Cavalry Division, at the beginning of May, were near Vlamertinghe, dismounted and ready to cover a withdrawal from part of the line in the salient which had become untenable. Two days—after the shortening of the line—were spent in feverish bouts of trench digging in the neighbourhood of Ypres, two days in Hazebrouck billets, and on the 9th the Division came under orders from the Second Army,* and the troops were again at Vlamertinghe. The trench strength of the Regiments at this time stood slightly above 275, all told, per regiment.

* Sir Herbert Plumer had just succeeded Sir Horace Smith-Dorrien; the Fifth Corps now came under Allenby, who gave over the Cavalry Corps to Byng, Briggs receiving the Third Division.

On the 12th, at 8.30 p.m., came the word to move up immediately to take over from the Infantry a section of the line extending from the Ypres-Zonnebeke Road to the Ypres-Menin Road (roughly between Verlorenhoek and Hooge). Ypres still burned from the effects of the German bombardment as the dismounted cavalymen swung through the gutted streets, machine guns on packs, ammunition, tools and rations in limbers. The city smelt of death—of recent death not laid to rest, of old death blown house-high by the bursting of great shells, tossed from its narrow grave of crumbling masonry; while over all hung the foul miasma of the salient in which it stood.

Out into the open they marched, out into the fields whose turf covered daily more and more of the remains of the British Regular Army. The night was quiet, rifle and machine-gun fire were almost hushed. A few guns were dropping an occasional lazy shell into the city, or registering on a trench system. Nights quiet as this were of evil omen in the salient. The infantry from whom the Division took over its positions reported the same unnatural calm, hoping, with the kindly feeling of the relieved, that it would continue for the benefit of their mounted comrades. The front line positions were taken over by the Seventh Cavalry Brigade on the left, the Sixth on the right, with the Eighth in reserve near Potijze in the G.H.Q. line.

The weakness of the position was on the left, where the First Life Guards crouched. Their extreme left was 150 yards in advance of their left-hand neighbours, the Bays, and could be enfiladed from a group of buildings to the north of the road, buildings which it would be impossible to deny to the enemy should he advance. There was no communication between the Life Guardsmen and the Bays; a trench was dug at once to rectify this, but

there was a gap of some seventy yards dead in the centre of the First Life Guards position, between their " B " and " A " Squadrons. In the gap was a farm. Each regiment in the front line was organised with two squadrons in the firing line, the third in reserve with a *point d'appui* manned by a machine-gun detachment and twenty rifles still further in rear.

As dawn broke damp and cold—to give way to biting wind and drenching rain—it seemed as if Hell itself had been suddenly let loose. Every enemy gun crashed out in a chorus of hate and destruction. The trenches were swamped, blown sky-high, and by 4 o'clock the bombardment had become so intense as to exceed all its heavy predecessors ; and so for three solid hours.

The enemy infantry seemed in no eager haste to advance, despite the encouragement of their own artillery. After several half-hearted runs forward (during which they did occupy the exposed buildings), the Infantry finally attacked at 7 o'clock. Their movement was mainly directed against the right of the position, and the Sixth Brigade, battered almost to bits, was forced to retire. The right of the Seventh Brigade was thus left in the air, and it was a matter of minutes before it became impossible to hold on. The Leicesters and the Seconds were withdrawn to the G.H.Q. line, involving also " A " Squadron of the First. For some ten minutes further " B " Squadron of the First were able to hold out ; then, unsupported from the right, enfiladed from the left, they were forced out. They did not join the remainder of the Brigade in the G.H.Q. line, but, rallying behind a mound 100 yards to the rear of their first position, they moved to the left into the trenches of the Bays. The entire Division, with this exception, was reorganised before 8.30 a.m. in the reserve line.

There was now a lull in the fighting of some hours. The

enemy made no further attempt to advance, although his artillery was continually active. The position of the remains of the Division was far from enviable. The ground immediately in rear of the G.H.Q. line was so well covered by enemy gunfire that they were virtually isolated, and movement of any sort was extremely hazardous. A counter-attack was prepared by the Tenth Royal Hussars during the morning, but for some reason unknown, was cancelled ere it was launched. So far the whole of the bombardment and attack had been carried out by the Boche without any query being addressed by our own artillery. Shortly after eight o'clock one solitary British heavy gun was got into position and set to shell the new enemy position. Feeble as this reply was it gave some moral assistance in the task of holding on. So costly in war material had been Neuve Chapelle that every shell had to be husbanded against the time of an actual counter-attack. The gunners were free from any blame which agonised men may have levelled at them ; every British soldier was beginning to realise that England, whose honour was at stake, had flung herself into war without any army or any machinery to equip one.

All through the long morning the enemy guns pounded on, and at 12.45 the Eighth Brigade prepared for a counter-attack. The men travelled light, rifles and bayonets and bandoliers only were to be carried. They moved out across the railway and through the Witte Poort Farm, to take cover behind a high bank fringed with trees. Then came a long, cold, wet and miserable wait, and a grim spectacle was provided by a number of dead and wounded of the Royals who lay behind the same bank ; the dead ghastly and uncaring, the wounded groaning and cursing, under the continuous shelling. The Brigade was drawn up with the Blues on the right, the Tenth on the left, supported by the Essex Yeomen.

The Tenth were reinforced by a party of 45 of the Seconds who had originally been intended as a digging party. In the old *point d'appui* of the First Life Guards, there still hung on Corporal of Horse G. Attenborough and four men of the Regiment, who eventually joined in the counter-attack. The remainder of the First Life Guards were still in the "Bays' " trenches, while the "Bays " gave splendid help in the reorganisation of the Regiment, and, forgetful of their own great troubles, were as mindful of the duties of hosts as if they had been in barracks at Aldershot.

Zero hour (2.30) approached and the Blues and Royals stood waiting to make what must have seemed an almost hopeless attempt. "Fix bayonets and dry your butts " (a very necessary precaution when cold steel meets the human body). Old Blues will always look back to that moment and conjure up the picture of their Colonel, Lord Tweedmouth, thinking with gratitude of the example he set them. He stood calm as ever, watch in hand, ready to launch his attack. He dropped his watch back into his pocket. "Advance !" Off they went, steadily, and in open files, towards the German lines. Six hundred yards had to be covered, the chief support coming from the Brigade's own machine-gunners, who kept up a very devil's tattoo of fire.* Arrived at the German position, the two Regiments closed their files and converged to take the enemy in force. The attack succeeded, nay more, the advance went on until the remnants of the Brigade flung themselves into the comparative comfort of the original enemy front line.

Alastair Leveson-Gower, one only upset by little things and whom big things found and left calm, reached the objective with only two of his troop unwounded. He

* Material help was given by armoured cars under the Duke of Westminster, an ex-officer of the Blues.

himself was hit in the thigh and will be long remembered surveying calmly the situation, a small unwounded German beneath him, and an immense cigar in his mouth. Afterwards, as he delighted to narrate, he was carried back by two good friends, both Corporals, by name Coffin and Churchyard.

Almost every man of the Division was by now in the front line, for the Second Life Guards had been moved up to occupy a gap between the Sixth and Eighth Brigades, while the First, as we have seen, were enjoying (?) the hospitality of the Queen's Bays. The position in its entirety was held until nightfall. At 8.15 p.m., however, it was deemed expedient to withdraw the advanced troops some 400 yards, where they finally consolidated, and remained until relieved on the 14th, when they marched to Vlamertinghe.

The Division lost 91 officers and 1,052 men. The mere figures are sufficiently serious for a unit of the small size of a Cavalry Division dismounted, but all the more so when it is remembered that every casualty deprived the Empire of the services of yet one more of those irreplaceable contemptibles. The 13th of May was a sad day, a bad day, but a day of undying glory, and if it was the last supreme effort of the old Regular Army, the Household Cavalry need have no stab of self-reproach as to the part they played in it.

It was not until May 21st that the Division finally reached its billets, and the remainder of the month was spent quietly. Much had to be done in the way of reorganisation. New drafts came out from England, and it may be noted, that although isolated and small detachments of war-enlisted men had previously joined the Regiments, these were the first drafts of any size to be composed almost entirely of such men.

On the 29th the Division was once more required to

take over trenches in the salient. The Sixth and Eighth Brigades went to Sanctuary Wood, the Seventh remaining in reserve on the ramparts of Ypres.

In the two days the First Life Guards lost Lieut. H. Hulton-Harrop killed, and Lieuts. Sir R. V. Sutton, Bart., M. Seton-Karr, J. S. Woolley, and G. Drummond wounded; and the Second Life Guards—killed, 2nd Lieuts. A. C. Hobson, F. W. A. Blofield, L. J. Townsend; wounded, Lieut.-Colonel A. F. H. Ferguson, Lieut. W. A. V. Bethell, 2nd Lieut. J. L. Cunningham.

The roll call of the Blues was to show even more that gallantry in face of a bitter and treacherous foe is a costly matter. Bowlby, the beloved comrade, keenest of officers and kindest of friends, was lying low. Spencer Compton, Davson and Pullen had finely fought and finely fallen, Phillips* had sounded his last view holloa, and was found in the German trenches with his bayonet through two Germans and a third lying dead shot with his revolver. Young Wendover†—a boy still in his teens with the face of a child and the heart of a lion—mortally hurt, was being carried to the coast to die upon his mother's breast. Foster was injured, never wholly to recover, and near a hundred non-commissioned officers and men were to be counted among the victims of an assault emerging from an exhibition of devilish ingenuity which the Dervishes of the Desert might have scorned to introduce.

APPENDIX TO CHAPTER VI

May 12th, 13th.—Still in huts near Vlamertinghe. In the afternoon got orders to go up into the trenches that night. Left the huts about 6.30 p.m. and marched into Ypres; the town burning fiercely and smelling horribly, extraordinary state of ruin. Shells dropping into the ruins occasionally; halted for a few minutes; very hot carrying

* Eldest son of Lord St. Davids, an exceptionally fine horseman.

† Only son of the Marquis of Lincolnshire, who, half a century earlier, had served in the Blues.

130 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

a good deal of food, etc. We went on through town, pitch dark, and men started straggling and would light cigarettes, which had to be stopped, as we were within the area where no lights allowed. After getting through Ypres, halted in the road, very glad to lie down. Stray bullets were now flying about, and German star shells lit up the country every few minutes. We now left the road and got through a gap in the fence in single file ; endless telephone wires, some on the ground and others about level of neck ; very liable to lose connection with those in front when crossing obstacles ; had to do an occasional run. At last got up to the reserve trenches, lay down behind them while we took over ; good deal of sniping and bursts of rapid fire. We were relieving one of the Middlesex Battalions, who said it had been quiet for the last few days ; sincerely hope it will continue ; continuous flow of strong language during these proceedings. Got into the trenches at last, very dark and could see nothing ; set to get the men into dug-outs, used my electric lamp till found it was safer not to ; settled most of the men, but found there were still some without a home, however the squadron on our left moved along and we finally got them all in ; very exhausting groping about in inky darkness. A party went off to draw rations, and Innes Ker and Wendover (killed) crawled into a very small and smelly dug-out, and after a drink lay down, not very pleased with life. The ration party came back, decided it was too late to issue them, crawled out and saw them stored and put the men into their dug-out ; took heavy fall over wire. Turned in again 1.30 a.m. Had to alter my position, a great feat ; did it without calling forth abuse from my bedfellows ; slept with my head in the opening. Very still night except for occasional firing. Slept on and off till daylight, when a terrific bombardment started, according to Gen. French's despatch the heaviest that had taken place during the war ; looked out, rainy and misty, shells dropping freely. Saw three stray horses grazing quietly behind the trench ; lay down again for a bit, but noise terrific ; after a time looked out and saw the three horses stiff on the ground, legs in the air. Colonel came along ; got up, woke Wendover with difficulty, sleeping like a log ; got the men to stand to. Our front line trench getting a bad time, seemed to be one long cloud of smoke. Soon some of the 1st and 2nd Life Guards began to straggle back ; said they had been blown out and lost heavily, most of them rather shaken. Beastly cold and wet ; could see Germans taking our front trench, shelling now directed on us. Expected an attack, so set to work to improve our trench ; hard to get the men to realise the position of affairs ; filled sandbags, packs, haversacks and strengthened the parapet. Muddy, and was beginning to get wet. Glad I was wearing Reggie's boots (adv.). Went round to see what spare ammunition there was, found a good deal in a dug-out, party went back to bring up more, and got it placed in various

spots. About 8 a.m. the 10th Hussars on our right left their trench and went round to our left to make a counter-attack (as a matter of fact they didn't make it till 2.30 p.m. when we did). Their place was taken by the 1st and 2nd L.G. remnants, and we spread out to cover the line. Several casualties from shell fire, but extraordinarily few considering the amount of noise. Tried to make out what was happening in front, but could not see much. Everything covered in mud, especially rifles; got the men to see to them and keep them covered as far as possible; posted a look-out and sat down and tried to pretend I liked it; several direct hits on our parapet. The bombardment seemed to lessen, but only for a bit, a big gun had been brought up just behind us, and fired, I think, with some effect; anyhow it made a tremendous din which cheered us up. Sat and shivered; about 12 p.m. Innes Ker told me to go to the dug-out and get some food; very glad to; had a good drink of rum and water. Just finished and feeling quite gay when Innes Ker looked in and said we had got orders to make a counter-attack at 2.30 p.m.; not very pleasant news. Got back to the trench and told the men to take off coats and equipment, only rifle and bayonet and bandolier to be carried; one man a squadron to be left behind to look after our belongings; left the oldest and fattest (this turned out to be useless, as two different regiments came into our trench and took what they wanted). About 12.45 we filed out to the right, a slight dip till we got the railway, but as soon as we got across it and through some farm buildings we were spotted; several men hit, amongst them Michael Wemyss and the Regimental Corporal-Major. Doubled to a high bank with trees, from where the attack was to be launched, huddled together close under it, with some remnants of the 1st Royals, who had had a bad time, several badly wounded and some gory sights. The men seemed to realise we were "for it," everybody soaked and cold; this was the worst part of the day. Shelling became very bad, but we were practically safe unless they got a direct hit, but noise of trees crashing down, etc., made one think. There is no doubt continuous shelling affects one a bit. Colonel now standing watch in hand; 2.20, order to fix bayonets and dry butts of rifles (the latter to prevent slipping when placing bayonet in Hun). Felt sorry to leave shelter of the bank. A Squad led, then D, who were to work round to the left, then B (mine). We left the bank in open files, and as soon as we got into the open, right turned. Men began to fall at once; seemed to be nothing but machine guns on every side, also every sort of shell. Ran hard, then all lay down; squadrons soon got mixed; looked at my revolver and cleaned some mud off. On again; regular hail of bullets; felt two sharp blows on my side (two bullets hit my wire cutters and were turned); seemed impossible for anybody to live much longer; felt slightly bloodthirsty when attack began, which helped. Got to a shell-hole;

seemed to be very few of our men left ; found most of my collar and shoulder strap shot away without wounding me ; another rush. Bowlby shot dead just in front of me ; lay close to him for a time ; looked wonderfully peaceful considering what was going on. More rushes, Philipps a long way in front giving view-halloas ; never saw him again. Reached a shell-hole with another man, Germans retiring ; opened fire at them. Shell fire and noise absolutely indescribable ; it seemed only a question of seconds before being blown to pieces. A ruined cottage disappeared in a sheet of flame and smoke, marvellous sight. Machine gun playing on us, our bayonets sticking up seemed to be drawing the fire. My companion thought it was getting too hot and decided to move away ; shot instantly. I saw the Colonel and Innes Ker on my left, perfectly cool, and gave one great confidence. Started to crawl towards them, but immediately hit in the neck ; went back to the hole, bleeding a good deal, thoughts of the jugular vein filled my mind. No men on my right at all. Got a message that we had better crawl back ; started on my stomach ; hit again in the arm, dropped rifle, arm quite numb. Began to feel rather weak, managed to get to another shell hole and stayed there for a time. Then crawled on, a tremendous explosion and then pitch darkness, thought this must be death ; violent pain in my head. I must have been knocked out for a short time. I went on again, but found I was crawling the wrong way, so had been completely turned round. Felt very sick and all blurred ; got into a ditch and crept along it ; progress difficult, managed to get rid of field glasses which had slipped down over my legs ; also muffler (sorry to part with it). Reached a clump of trees where I stood up ; unsteady on legs, and not a very healthy spot as branches were crashing down. Col. now took hold of me and helped me, reached a dip and at last were under cover from machine guns, but shells still plentiful. Arrived at the embankment, where somebody else took hold of me ; seemed to wander on for hours, pursued by shells. At last got to outskirts of Ypres and found a dressing station, wounds dressed and lay on the floor in a cellar, soaked to the skin and covered with mud. Placed packed, a lot of groaning and cursing, several deaths. Found Michael Wemyss there ; very cold, but luckily found my flask. Stayed there till 10 p.m., shelling still violent ; moved off in ambulance to another station about five miles ; ran off the road, which delayed us some time. Wounds dressed again ; lay in a house till 6 a.m. the next morning drinking copious amount of tea ; several officers there, Wilfred Ricardo, of the Leicester Yeomanry. At 6 a.m. started in a motor convoy for Bailleul, most uncomfortable journey and very trying ; at last reached the clearing hospital, got fed and had my boots taken off, sent a wire, wounds again looked at. After a stay of a few hours left in hospital train, put into a bed and given champagne, which was heavenly. After a journey of

18 hours arrived at Versailles ; first-rate hospital, but most appreciated the absence of noise. Got clothes off, which had now dried, washed, and then bed. [Diary of Lieut. Murray Smith.]

On May 12th the 3rd Division took one line of trenches near Potozie, the 6th and 7th Bdes. in the front line, 5th in the reserve trenches. We had a long and unpleasant walk through Ypres, which is entirely ruined now and blown to pieces. We took over our trenches about 1 a.m. on the 13th in the dark and at 4 a.m. the Germans started shelling this ; they kept up continuously till the evening, both the front and rear trenches ; they practically blew the 2nd Life Guards out of their trenches and they retired on us, leaving a big gap in the front line, occupied by the guns. We were told to counter-attack at 2.30 p.m., after a supposed preliminary artillery bombardment, which was not in the least effective. The 10th Hussars were to attack from the left, we from the right, and then the Essex Yeomanry were to come in from the left front, the 10th were able to get fairly near up to the trench without great loss and we got to our position of readiness with only half a dozen casualties, including Michael Wemyss. About 12.45 close to Headquarters of the 8th Cav. Bde., where David Campbell was, I wanted to try and get further round near his first-line trenches, but both he and Col. Steel said it was not possible and that the only way to go was over a railway and the open country as nothing could live on the ridge or behind it. I think it would have been better if I had gone that way as we should have had nothing like the distance to go—about 1,000 yards. However, it was their line and presumably they knew : but eventually we started the counter-attack and a certain number of our men got into the left of the bit of trench we were to go for ; the Germans did not wait for them, but fled, leaving a lot of kit behind. On the right we got hung up with cross machine-gun fire, and did not reach the trench ; however, the object was attained, as the Germans bolted. I had the machine gun on the right in the Royals' communication trench, and Drummond claims to have killed about 150 !! In any case between the Artillery and him a good many were accounted for ; but for sheer, unmitigated hell I have never imagined such shell fire as we received from all kinds of guns, big and small, shrapnel and high explosive shell ; it really is a mystery to me why anyone got away clear. The men were splendid, and have been very much complimented on the attack both by the gunners and a report from an airman who said it looked like a parade movement. Poor Old Bowlby was shot and refused assistance ; he was almost instantaneously killed. Philipps dashed into the trench with four or five men with the greatest gallantry and was shot just as he got into it. Davson sprinted away at top speed in front of his men and was killed ; they were all magnificent, and one can hardly single out one from another. (Tweedmouth to Colonel Fitzgerald.)

134 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

WAR DIARY OF FIRST LIFE GUARDS.

12TH—14TH MAY, 1915.

1915, May 12th, Vlamertinghe.—Regiment took over trenches in accordance with attached Brigade orders. The line taken over was not that mentioned in B.M. 37 above, but further north at Verlorenhoek. Regiment relieved a Bat. of East Surrey Regiment. On taking over news was received that Lieut. H. Hulton-Harrop had been killed in the trenches during the day just as the relief was completed. 2/Lieut. J. S. Woolley was wounded.

Following officers were in trenches night of 12th/13th :—

Lieut.-Colonel Hon. A. F. Stanley, D.S.O.

Capt. G. E. M. Mundy.

Capt. J. J. Astor.

Capt. R. Hamilton-Stubber.

Capt. & Adj. Hon. E. H. Wyndham.

Capt. Sir R. V. Sutton.

Lieut. G. H. Drummond.

2/Lieut. M. Seton-Karr.

2/Lieut. J. S. Woolley.

2/Lieut. T. K. Robson.

2/Lieut. S. C. Bostock.

Surg. Lieut. E. D. Anderson.

The left of the position occupied by the regiment rested on the Ypres-Zonnebeke road and was some 150 yards in advance of the front trenches occupied by the Queen's Bays on the north of the road. This was a source of weakness, as the line could be enfiladed from some houses just north of the road, which it was not easy to deny to the enemy should they advance.

This section of the line was occupied by "B" Squadron with "D" Squadron and H.Q. in a support trench 50 yards in rear. When regiment took over these two trenches were not joined by the communicating trench. This, however, was dug during the night.

On the right of "B" Squadron was a gap in the line of some 150 yards in which a farm was situated. South of the farm was "A" Squadron joining on the right with Second Life Guards.

One machine gun under 2/Lieut. Bostock was posted in "B" Squadron trench, the other with 20 men of "A" Squadron under 2/Lieut. M. Seton-Karr was posted in a farm 300 yards in rear of the position to form a "point d'appui."

13th, 3.30 a.m.—The enemy's guns began to register on the position. At 4 a.m. a very heavy bombardment commenced and lasted with unabated vigour till 7 a.m. This was unquestionably the heaviest bombardment the regiment had ever experienced during the campaign. The enemy's "*Minenwerfer*" were particularly effective.

At 7 a.m. the enemy's infantry advanced. They did not appear to

be in any great strength, and made no frontal attack on the front of "B" Squadron, but made for the houses on the left, mentioned above.

About 7.10 a.m. it was noticed that the right of the Brigade line was retiring. "A" Squadron was involved in this retirement. Regiment less "A" Squadron hung on for another ten minutes when it was forced to retire, both flanks being threatened.

They rallied behind a mound 100 yards in rear of the support trench, but the enemy advanced feebly and presented no target. From this position Regiment moved to the left into the front trenches of the Queen's Bays, where they remained all day.

Meanwhile "A" Squadron retired on G.H.Q. lines, which was occupied by the Divisional Reserve.

No. 2048 Corpl. of Horse G. Attenborough and four men remained in a large shell hole just in front of the "point d'appui" (which had been destroyed by enemy's guns) until 10th Hussars counter-attacked at 2.30 p.m. when they joined in the counter-attack.

Throughout the day H.Q., "B" & "D" Squadrons remained in Bays trenches, and all ranks owe a deep debt of gratitude to the latter regiment for the magnificent support and assistance they gave to the regiment throughout a very trying day.

Throughout the day the trenches were very heavily shelled. In all the enemy's guns fired on the position for 16 consecutive hours. Position lost in morning retaken by brilliant counter-attack by 8th Cavalry Brigade at 2.30 p.m., but they were unable to hold it, retiring again about 4 p.m.

The disposition of the Cavalry on the 12th-13th May, was thus: Third Cavalry Division (Major-General Briggs) on the right with the Sixth (Brigadier-General Campbell) and the Seventh (Brigadier-General Kennedy) Cavalry Brigades in the front line, the Eighth (Brigadier-General Bulkeley-Johnson) in reserve; First Cavalry Division (Major-General De Lisle) on the left, with the First (Brigadier-General Makins) and Second (Brigadier-General Mullens) Cavalry Brigade in front line, and the Ninth (Brigadier-General Greenly) in reserve. Each Brigade furnished about 50 officers, and between 800 and 900 rifles, and a Machine Gun detachment.

At 8.30 p.m. regiment retired to Potijze in accordance with G. 69.

14th, 2.30 a.m. Regiment moved into G.H.Q. lines, where it remained all day. Brigade forming Divisional Reserve.

Capt. J. C. G. Leigh and one other rank joined "B" Echelon from Base.

At 9 p.m. 2nd Cavalry Division relieved 3rd Cavalry Division, and regiment retired to huts at Vlamertinghe.

CHAPTER VII

IN the first days of June the Household Cavalry were once more in the Ypres district, to find parties for digging and trench work, and hear that the First King's Dragoon Guards had taken that bone of contention, the Château of Hooze, which stiffened our position considerably. The Regiments were at this time stationed, as far as the horse-lines were concerned, round about Steenbecque and Wardrecque, but on the 15th of the month the First Life Guards were required to move their billets to facilitate the passage of the Third Army, on its way to make its *début* at the front.

Training—beset by difficulties—and digging up and down the line was for the moment the business of the Cavalry. Parties were perpetually required for work at the front and in reserve positions, and Squadron Leaders and Commanding Officers must have despaired of maintaining their commands as efficient Cavalry Units, and were often hard put to it to give the horses even a modicum of grooming and exercise, but twice in two months the C.E. of the Third Army Corps was moved to applaud the labours of the Household Cavalry with the spade.

Billets were changed on August 4th to a district round about Fauquembergues and Fruges, and these billets were occupied with small moves throughout the whole of the coming winter.

The British Expeditionary Force was growing fast, and during the summer each Regiment was carefully inspected by the Commander-in-Chief.

The Guards' Division stood complete in time for the autumn fighting in France, and with the last two of the New Army Divisions to arrive, the Twenty-first and Twenty-fourth, was formed into the Eleventh Corps under General Haking. To the First Army under Haig was now assigned an attack on the enemy's lines between Lens and La Bassée. Foch at the same moment was to assault the Vimy Ridge, and it was fondly hoped that an advance upon both sides of the intricate mining area of Lens would compel the Germans to evacuate that hideous but vitally important industrial centre, and that Haig and Foch would then step out to Douai.

The Battle of Loos opened on September 25th, and there was just sufficient breeze in the right direction to facilitate our first discharge of gas. The gas unquestionably made its mark on the Germans—although here and there the fumes came back upon and overcame some of our own men—and the infantry, storming forward behind the vaporous yellow clouds, made short work of carrying the town of Loos. Then the unhappy happened; the reserves on whom Haig depended to complete and confirm his fine initial success were belated, or withheld, and he must see his leading companies driven back by weighty German counter-assaults, while he heard that the French on his right were unable to make anything like full headway.

The two divisions in reserve were kept under the orders of the Commander-in-Chief, and were only directed to join Haig when the success of the First Army became known at G.H.Q. Though the two divisions then came on as fast as they could, their leading troops did not cross our former front line until 6 p.m., that is, twelve hours after the taking of Loos. Haig had asked for the reserve divisions to be placed under his orders before the commencement of the battle, in order that they

might be so disposed as to be available immediately Loos had fallen, and before the enemy had had time to reinforce his second line, his chagrin was the more acute.

The Cavalry took up its reserve positions on September 21st; the Life Guards, as in the Seventh Cavalry Brigade, were not in action, but their comrades of the Blues, although not required as Cavalry, put in some fine Infantry work in the front line.

In the dark hours before the battle began the Regiment rode up to Vermelles, some two miles from Loos, halting behind one of the slag heaps which are a feature of this essentially mining district. Up the nearby Lens road masses of Infantry were pouring—pouring in an ever-widening stream—filling the communication trenches, trickling over the open fields.

Not for the first, nor the last, time the weather seemed to be allying itself to the enemy. A deluge of rain fell, making accurate bombardment, aerial reconnaissance and swift movement almost impossible to carry out.

A little in front of the slag heaps rose that slight excrescence of ground, unworthy in peace time of a map contour, raised to a big practical position in war, known as Hill 70. This the Twenty-fourth Division attacked at noon, only to fall back in the evening. Further to the south the Allies had carried all before them, some troops indeed plunged through the line never to reappear. It was rumoured that kilted troops had fought to the death in the very streets of Lens, but to the north little progress could be made. Fosse 8, a large low slag heap north of Hulloch, had been carried by our First Division, and later lost. It was this important position that the Blues were asked to retake on the 26th.

With the stoicism born of war, the Regiment awaited the coming of another May 13th, but as the attack was about to be launched the order was cancelled and the

Regiment stood where it was. In the evening the advanced troops of the Guards' Division started to come through, and later the Blues found themselves marching alongside dismounted, with orders to take over the trenches at Lone Tree. This order again was cancelled, the trenches being already so full that they could hold no more, and after losing half of its machine-gun section in a shell burst the Regiment returned to Vermelles.

At 10 p.m. a move was once more made, this time in the direction of Hill 70. Along the Vermelles-Loos Road they marched, a road pitted with shell holes, piled high with smashed transport, littered with dead horses, a monument to German gunnery and the desperate nature of organised attack in these latter days. The village of Loos was a town of the dead. British and German corpses sprawled everywhere, while the wounded awaited in hundreds the coming of the ambulances. In the cellars below, dazed and weary, the staffs of the troops of the first attack still worked, and waited for news of their men, news which never came. Confusion was everywhere.

Arrived at the foot of Hill 70 the Blues found the Sixth Cavalry Brigade and relieved it. The line, such as it was, afforded no cover, and strong patrols had to be sent out to silence the snipers and to protect the main line. The latter was held by two squadrons, the third remaining in reserve on the outskirts of Loos.

When it became light enough to gain any idea of the situation it was found that the Blues were holding the very apex of the new salient. All day they laboured at bringing in wounded, men who had lain in the open for forty-eight hours or more. It was a thankless task. All the excitement of advance was gone, leaving only the drab danger. But in the cause of mercy the men worked doggedly on, careless of what seemed almost certain

death. No rare occurrence, only an incident of war ; but here is heroism, not in its showier forms, but in its very essence.

Early in the afternoon of the 27th a staff officer arrived and explained the nature of the new operations. One battalion was going to attack at Puits 14 Bis on the left, to be followed, if successful, by an advance of more battalions to the assault of the main Hill 70 positions. The attack was to be supported by the Blues' machine guns from a flank.

The general courage of the German soldier of the period is not under dispute, but the bravery of the German machine-gun team which appeared suddenly from some hole in the ground, without support, is worthy of record. They opened fire with deadly effect on the Foot Guards and continued until wiped out by the Blues' machine gunners, firing at point blank range.

The attack failed, fascinating in its grim excitement, terrible in its inevitable failure. Another assault in the evening met with no better fate. On the following day in the evening, the Blues were relieved by the Liverpools.*

* *Extract from Diary of Corporal G. Lowman, Royal Horse Guards.*

At 8 o'clock in the evening of the 25th, we were told we had to go up and hold the trenches somewhere in the vicinity of the famous Hohenzollern Redoubt ; so off we tracked. On the way up we got heavily shelled and our Machine Gun Squadron stopped the worst of it, Troopers Terry and Small being killed and five others badly wounded. Just before reaching the front line for some reason we turned back. The Guards Division were on the way up after having a rest. We thought we had dodged it, but when we got back to our horses we soon had to turn out again. This time we took up our position in some trenches on a ridge between Loos and Lens. The scene going up was indescribable, the road and the fields were one mass of dead horses, men, and smashed transport.

The next afternoon on our left we saw a battalion of the Foot Guards making an attack on the Hohenzollern Redoubt. They were going down like nine-pins. I enquired of Lord Tweedmouth who it was attacking, and he told me it was the First Grenadiers. I had a brother

Once again the attack was launched. Once again it failed. One other incident is worthy of note. An N.C.O. who had been busy bringing in wounded brought back the information that two wounded men were lying in the open, one of whom accused the other of being a spy. The two were fetched in and the matter investigated. The accused looked thoroughly English and his accuser had all the appearance of a Lyceum villain. Both were badly wounded, both wore English uniform. Their evidence, having been written down and pinned to their clothing, they were sent to the rear in the hope that some Solomon would be forthcoming to solve the enigma.

After these two days of constant shelling and almost constant gassing the Blues, with the other Cavalry units, were withdrawn.* It was here that the Cavalry scored, as they almost always knew when the Higher Command had decided that the battle was over.

The Cavalry divisions now moved back to their winter billets, and were required to take no further part in the fighting for the remainder of the year. The situation was everywhere quiet. Things were, indeed, a little nervy in the

in that battalion and I very much wanted to go over and see if he was all right. A few days after I learned that he was severely wounded in the attack and was in hospital at Manchester.

We were just under a ridge and on the top of it I saw a wounded man waving his hand, and I got Lord Tweedmouth's permission to go out and try to get him in. When I reached him there were two or three Germans lying not far away. I could see them quite plainly and they let fly at me, but luckily for me they weren't marksmen. I shook my fist at them and started dragging the wounded man in. He was a sergeant in the Lancashire Fusiliers and had been badly hit in the back with an explosive bullet. I succeeded in getting him in and took him down to the dressing station where Capt. Bodington was busy with the wounded. Shortly after that Captain Bodington and his assistant, Cpl. Maj. Scarborough, were both hit.

* The French award for Household Cavalry services at Loos issued, curiously enough, a Legion of Honour for a Life Guards officer who was doing police duty at Ypres.

neighbourhood of Loos for weeks to come until both sides had made the best of their new positions. The Cavalry were continually being called upon to provide large or small parties for digging, etc. The dépôts at home were swelled with men enlisted into the mounted arm in the days when it was assumed that the war would follow normal courses. The Regiments in France, on the other hand, were frequently faced with a most serious, if temporary shortage, on account of the absence of digging parties. It was decided, therefore, to increase each regiment with a new draft of a hundred dismounted men. The congestion of the dépôts was relieved, and the Cavalry at the front were not only able to find the fatigue parties without neglecting their mounts, but also to give their young soldiers the finest training on the actual battle front. These drafts reached their Regiments at the end of October.

During the month of November the entire Cavalry Corps (*i.e.*, the British Cavalry Corps as distinct from the Indian Divisions) was organised so as to be able to provide a complete dismounted division for use in the line at such times as they might not be required as mounted forces. Each Regiment was to provide a company of 320 all told, in six platoons. The organisation was completed by mid-December. The formation was preserved throughout the war and was frequently brought into working order on the numerous occasions when the Cavalry Corps was required to perform a tour of duty in the line. Christmas over, the Cavalry Dismounted Division "stood to" for a move to the line for the first time under new conditions.

In the first enthusiasm of the war men were enrolled, almost indiscriminately, in whatever arm of the service they chose. The Cavalry having always some savour of romance, the Household Cavalry had its full share, and something over, of recruits. Their barracks were soon

full to overflowing, and not even the cancellation of the "duration of war" enlistment stemmed the tide. Although a quite different story was heard later, it seemed in 1915 that their Regiments in the field would scarcely absorb the reserves in training, and the authorities cast about for some means of utilising men of the Reserve Household Cavalry Regiment other than by a definite transfer to other units, which might have proved an infelicitous step. Kitchener's formation—under the seal of the Sovereign's hearty approval—of the Guards Division suggested the first outlet. Lord Cavan, the Divisional Commander elect, would surely require Divisional Cavalry and Cyclists; what more appropriate and historically correct than that a Brigade of Guards should be companioned by the Household Brigade? Trained mounted men were fretting to go to France; expert cyclists, mentally as well as physically alert, were no less keen and scarcely less prepared. It was decided that what had been known as the First Service Squadron of the First Life Guards Reserve Regiment should be shipped overseas as the Guards Divisional Cavalry Squadron, while Ames and Fitzgerald could combine to provide a strong Cyclist company of six troops.

In the early morning of August 4th, 1915, the Divisional Squadron crossed to France with a total of 6 officers, 157 other ranks and 167 horses. Major B. Corbet was the Squadron Leader, his subordinates being Captain Lord Somers, Lieutenants Spicer, Reeves, Pelly and Thynne. After two days in Havre the Squadron entrained for St. Omer, marching thence to Esquerda, where they billeted during the moulding of the Guards Division. As the First Life Guards were quartered at Coyecques, only a few miles away, frequent visits were made, and on one occasion a rendezvous between Regiment and Squadron took place near the villages of

Remilly and Wirquim, when a joint scheme, as part of training, was arranged. On August 16th a surprise turnout was sprung on the Squadron, which was effected in fifty minutes, to the great glee of all concerned, as they understood that the First Life Guards themselves, with the experience of twelve months in the field, could only better the time by five minutes.

"The men are improving enormously," writes Lord Somers in his diary. The same officer, however, expresses anxiety as to the possibility of the Squadron being able to carry out its duties as a fighting force, as he calculated that when all the men were detached that had been demanded for special duties, a bare seventy-one would be left in the ranks.

A week before the battle of Loos, Captain the Hon. E. A. Fitzroy * took over command of the Squadron, and on September 24th took it to Marles-les-Mines, where it was to stand by for the offensive. The Guards Division came into action on the second day of the engagement and Fitzroy was told to make his way along the Lens road and be ready for anything that might be required of him. What was chiefly required of him was a good deal of arduous police duty in the Divisional area, and a good many escorts for prisoners to the cages. Six weeks were spent in the grimy district between Bethune and Loos, and on October 28th an inspection by the King was suddenly cancelled by reason of H.M.'s serious accident when riding the Commander-in-Chief's favourite charger. On November 8th the scene changed to the Merville area, where duties—police, "signals," orderlies and other varieties—were so thoroughly performed as to earn a hearty word of praise from the Divisional Commander, who paid the Squadron a visit on Christmas Day. On February 17th Cavan was under orders to join the

* In the spring he was succeeded by Captain Mundy.

Second Army, and his Divisional Squadron, after six weeks in and round Ledringhem, was moved down to the back areas, joined by their Cyclist comrades as well as by the Cavalry and Cyclists of the Third and Ninth Divisions, and attached to the Second Cavalry Division for training ; the training being the purer Cavalry type of protecting dismounted divisions, scouting and holding outpost lines.

With the organisation of the Expeditionary Force into Corps and the gathering up of the old Divisional Squadrons into Regiments of Corps Cavalry, Mundy was posted for a month's duty with the Fourteenth Corps Cavalry, and on June 20th, 1916, the Squadron was withdrawn to Rouen and dissolved, its components being held to reinforce—according to now positive requirements—the First Life Guards.

The Cyclists Company, its training at Windsor accomplished, and officered by Captain Montgomerie, Captain E. P. Hare, Lieutenants G. F. Hughes, Herbert Nicholson, Haggie, Falcke and Whitelaw, found itself in France within a fortnight of the Divisional Squadron, and likewise in Divisional Reserve to the Guards at Loos. But in reserve the Company did not stay, for on September 29th it was hurriedly pitched into the front line, where it stood, not without suffering, the better part of two days, to find on its return that the bicycles stacked in the town had been largely damaged by shell fire, and that one of the guards had been killed. Early in November Montgomerie was bidden to take up billets in Lestrem and later in the month at Ledringhem, and enjoined to make himself generally useful in the Merville district. The Cyclists quickly gained—and retained—the reputation of being specially handy for any job, and past-masters in the craft of salvage, 1,484 rifles, 187,000 rounds of S.A.A., 100 sacks of equipment, and 284 greatcoats being numbered among their recoveries.

H.C.

L

While the Guards Division looked to the Cyclists Corps in cousinly fashion, to fill any gap or make good any defect, the R.E. and R.A.S.C. were always eager to pounce on them for any of that special class of fatigue which so richly justifies its name; thus the spell of cavalry training with the divisional squadron came to them in April, 1916, as something of a rest.*

In the autumn of 1915 there occurred in London an incident which was only not unhappy, because it afforded the Sovereign another opportunity of bestowing a benediction on brave men. In order to quicken up voluntary enrolment, which was beginning somewhat to languish, *The Times* newspaper put out a recruiting supplement, giving a short record of various Regiments, and it was thought that the fine tradition which had just been so nobly furthered would fire anew the energies of the men in the line and induce those who were still hesitating as to whether they should join them to hesitate no more. An invitation to make a *précis* of Regimental Records was tendered to Mr. John Fortescue, the author of *The History of the British Army*. No better—perhaps no other—choice could have been made. Unfortunately the distinguished writer thought that he might agreeably inaugurate his task by dropping ridicule and reproach on the Regiments which stood first on the Army List. “The First and Second Life Guards”—so ran his note—“began life as Troops of Life Guards at the Restoration, but degenerated into comic soldiers, until they were reformed as Regiments in 1788. They were useless in the Peninsula, but did well at Waterloo. The ‘Lumpers’ or ‘Tinbellies’ have for some time past been working to take their share in every important campaign.”

The comparison which it was further sought to draw

* In February, 1916, the Cyclists, or as many as could be hastily brought together, were inspected by Lord Kitchener.

between the earlier services of the Life Guards* and the Blues was equally distasteful to both Corps, and was moreover in conflict with historic fact. If comparison were necessary the campaigns of the former in the seventeenth century were a fair set-off to the war work of the latter in the eighteenth, while in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries they had been linked as comrades in arms. The jibe was especially unhappy, being uttered but a year after the tragic day when two Squadrons of Life Guards had been massacred to a man, and the special position and skilful pen of the mocker made the mocking the more acute.

Soldiers are apt to be a little vague about their Regimental History, but any slight offered to recognised tradition—like any inroad on privilege—is sure to be sharply resented, and angry murmurs were heard in Barracks. The Senior Gold Stick, Lord Grenfell, scarcely needed to be asked to address himself to the Sovereign and to report the bitter murmurs which were heard both at home and in France.

“ 9th Nov. 1915.

“ 18, Portman Square, W.

“ Your Majesty, Sir,

“ Sir George Holford, Lt.-Col. of the Reserve Regt. of 1st Lifeguards, has brought to my notice the fact that great indignation has been aroused—not only among the Officers but also the N.C.O.’s and men of the Regt. by the reference made with regard to the 1st and 2nd Life Guards in the ‘Sketches of the Regiments of the Army,’

*

5th Nov. 1915.

My attention has been drawn to the enclosed paragraph by one of the officers of the Household Cavalry, who dwells on the feeling of soreness which it has caused. Even a superficial study of the history of these two Regiments proves the suggestion to be grotesquely incorrect in view of Dettingen, Fontenoy, Flanders, &c. That the Life Guards deteriorated from 1750 until their reconstruction in 1788 is true, but this is the only period of decay. Surely, for one of the

published in *The Times*, in the Recruiting Supplement of the 3rd inst.

"The invidious comparison drawn between the services of the 1st and 2nd Life Guards and the Royal Horse Guards is very offensive to the former, and I feel sure will be regretted by the Royal Horse Guards.

"These depreciatory statements made by so distinguished a historian as the Hon. John Fortescue—actually in your Majesty's service as Librarian—on two Regiments of which Your Majesty is Colonel-in-Chief, and which are specially affiliated to the Royal Household, have caused distress as well as pain to all ranks of Your Majesty's Life Guards, and as Colonel of the First Life Guards, I venture to bring this unfortunate occurrence to Your Majesty's notice.

"etc.

"(GRENFELL)."

The reply was equally prompt, and between the lines could be read the indignation of the Sovereign whose pleasure it was that his note should reach the ears of every Life Guardsman whatever his rank, and wherever his service at the time.*

King's servants to go out of his way to sneer at Regiments which own the Sovereign for their Colonel-in-Chief, and which are specially affiliated to the Royal Household, is a strange error of taste. The literary position of the writer is so eminent that the wound inflicted smarts the worse.

[G. A. to Sir F. Ponsonby.]

*

Hyde Park Barracks,

Nov. 17, 1915.

Colonel Comdg. 2nd Life Guards.

The King commands me as Senior Colonel of 1st & 2nd Life Guards to forward His Majesty's remarks enclosed, for communication to the 2nd Life Guards, in orders.

(Sgd.) GRENFELL,
Field Marshal,
Colonel, 1st Life Guards.

“ Buckingham Palace,

“ Nov. 17, 1915.

“ The King as Colonel-in-Chief of his Household Cavalry, much regrets the notice, regarding the 1st & 2nd Life Guards, which appeared in the Supplement of *The Times* of Nov. 3rd.

“ The King has caused the expression of his sentiments to be conveyed to the writer, and His Majesty takes this opportunity of again recording his keen satisfaction with the conduct, and his deep pride in the traditions of his Household Cavalry. ”

The message of the King was all-sufficing to heal an ugly sting, to hush some rather menacing comments, and to render immaterial the colourless apology which the eminent historian perfunctorily offered.

CHAPTER VIII

IN November, 1915, the Government decided that with the end of the year should come the end of Sir John French's leadership in the field. The war had already far exceeded, both in duration and dimensions, what Sir John had anticipated ; there were signs that the command had outgrown the commander, and moreover, important duties awaited him at home. It was necessary to find a soldier to possess all Sir John's fine military qualities, and add to them an even temper, a cool judgment, a broad outlook—and a total aloofness from politics. One man stood out in high relief, and in Sir Douglas Haig the command of the British Armies on the Western front was unhesitatingly vested.* His first step was of no little importance. "As directed by you," he wrote to Lord Kitchener on New Year's Day, 1916, "I have done my best to start on friendly terms with the French. I think I have made a good beginning. I visited Chantilly about ten days ago on the first occasion, and got on so well with Joffre that he invited me to a sort of family gathering with his three Army Group Commanders, and the President, General Gallieni, and M. Briand. This meeting came off last Wednesday—we parted great friends !

"The chief question under discussion was the defence against a German attack.

"I stated that I was satisfied with our existing defences, but there was no finality in such matters, and

* Sir Douglas Haig succeeded Sir Evelyn Wood in the Colonelcy of the Blues, July 23rd, 1918.



FIELD-MARSHAL EARL HAIG.

that we kept on improving our system of defence from week to week.

"There are indications of the enemy preparing to attack in the direction of Roye-Montdidier. The Tenth (French) Army say they think on south of Arras also. Also against the Ypres salient. Joffre thinks Toye is the most likely direction. I expect his view is correct, and that the other preparations are only feints intended to mislead us and to absorb our Reserves."

Haig's hands were indeed full, and—although he was always happy in delegating details to subordinates—in those capable hands the threads of the war were closely retained to the end. The lesson of the battle of Loos—the battle in which his own dispositions were sadly robbed of their due reward—and the future—which just now seemed none too rosy—had to be considered in all its complexity. Although the "Kitchener Armies" would not, according to their author's plan, reach their full strength for the next eighteen months, there was a steady pour of troops of all arms into France, although it could scarcely be claimed for them that they were fully ripe for an immediate offensive movement.

Their training and "hardening" had been thorough, they had been well disciplined and well drilled, and every effort had been made to bring them to the old standard of musketry, so that the regular soldier's "mad minute," to which he owed so much of his early success, had almost been reproduced; time was to show it could be surpassed. In the few months of comparatively quiet warfare which awaited them the newcomers could learn their last lessons, the officers could remedy any lack of Sandhurst training, and new staffs could gain experience in the handling of a hitherto unthinkable-large army in the field. More especially there would be breathing time for the new artillery. That the new batteries could be in

France at all was a wonder ; it was scarcely conceivable that they could already be at the top of their form. The organisation of this arm was to be remodelled, and instead of confining each battery to its Brigade or Division of Infantry, a new re-grouping would ensure for the higher command the full benefit of steadily-increasing fire efficiency. If the French Infantry, armed with the obsolescent Lebel rifle, could scarcely hope to emulate the "mad minute," their artillery was peerless, the veteran gunners handling with equal skill their heavy ordnance, the justly praised '75, and the highly mobile 3-inch quick-firing gun. Germany still largely out-gunned her opponents and could exult in her multitude of machine guns ; her artillery, numerically vastly superior, was badly served, while the German staff, trained to work by rule of thumb, seemed to suck curiously little advantage from the occasions of success and reverse.

At the commencement of 1916 it was decided to brigade all the cavalry machine gun sections. In the Seventh Cavalry Brigade the sections of the First and Second Life Guards, together with the gunners of the Leicester Yeomanry, were constituted into the Seventh Machine Gun Squadron, under Major Pirrie, while the Blues Machine Gun Section formed part of the Eighth Squadron. When eventually the Machine Gun Corps (Cavalry) was formed, the Gun Squadrons of the Seventh and Eighth Brigades were regarded rather in the light of thorns in the side of the newly-formed Corps, by reason of the fact that, as each contained elements of the Household Cavalry, neither could be included in the ranks of the Machine Gun Corps. Nay more, there were difficulties within the ranks of both squadrons. Here were units of so small a size as a squadron where men of the Yeomanry and Line Cavalry were required to work alongside men of Household Cavalry Units drawing at that time a rate

of pay considerably higher. Whatever reasons there were or had been for this higher rate of pay, the lower paid men had, on the face of it, a grievance. The two obstacles were overcome, to a great extent, in early 1918, by the bringing into the Seventh Machine Gun Squadron of the Blues Machine Gunners, while those of the Leicesters were sent elsewhere.

Whatever may have been the administrative difficulties caused by the peculiar constitution of these two squadrons, they were valued at the highest rate as fighting forces. It is not too much to state that during the last twelve months of the mounted existence of the Household Cavalry in France, the gunners saw more of actual warfare than their parent Regiments. Frequently, when the Regiments were engaged in exceedingly useful but unromantic "jobs of work" in or behind the front, the Machine Gun Squadrons were in request for work in the line. It was already evident that the Machine Gun Corps, in so far as its infantry branch was concerned, was suffering from the haphazard nature of its constitution, while the Machine Gun Squadrons, even in brigades where the men had been nominally transferred to the Corps, gained considerably in efficiency from the fact that men were still serving, if not with their Regiments, at least on Brigade Headquarters of the Brigade to which their Regiment belonged. Among these Squadrons the Seventh and Eighth frequently gained their special meed of praise, and, when the time came for the Household Machine Gun Brigade to be formed, its units were greatly strengthened by the inclusion of this small number of veteran machine gunners.

The whole front was quiet for the moment, and every week that passed was a week gained for the Allies, alike for training and for the reconstitution of the battle line. On January 3rd the Third Cavalry Division took train for

the Hulloch-Loos Sector, the Seventh Cavalry Brigade billeting at Labourse on the Bethune-Lens road. After a short spell of roadmaking a line of trenches was taken over on the 9th in positions made famous in the struggle of the previous September. The Household Cavalry had had to make good their heavy losses, and to many troopers there came now the first experience of trench warfare. But the good seasoning of pre-war veterans gave the Cavalry generally a considerable advantage. The casualties just now were not heavy ; there were periodical raids on a small scale, and bombers were making their *début* ; the close proximity of the enemy lines secured the actual front positions from excessive artillery bombardment. The guns on both sides were busy on reserve positions, billets and lines of communication, but the British gunners, now well stuffed with ammunition and eager for practice, restored to the Germans tenfold what they received in the matter of shells. In spare time the proverbial cleanliness of the British Army reasserted itself, and the razor and shaving brush made something like their first appearance in the front line. Equipment was cleaned as soon as troops returned to billets, and from billets came the now more frequently-recurring leave.

Through the spring months the Cavalry lodged in the same stretch of line, parties being relieved at intervals, and it was an open question whether a man was better off " up the line " or behind it with a roof over his head, but having to attend to the requirements of eight or ten horses for his own share. At the end of May the Household Cavalry were withdrawn to the Abbeville area, where exercises known as the " Abbeville Manœuvres " were engaged in under delightfully fine skies, and were, as a matter of fact, thoroughly enjoyed. It was just now that the new shrapnel helmet was served out. The tin hat

was received with mingled astonishment and ridicule, and its utility was only fully established under the attentions of the German gunner. On June 24th, Colonel the Hon. A. G. Stanley crossed from the First Life Guards to take command of the Second, and a few days later all three Regiments had arrived at Bonnav on the Somme. It was an open secret that a pitched battle was imminent, and for weeks past the seasoned French artillery and the younger, but no less keen, gunners of Great Britain, had been plastering the German lines in reserve position. The hearts of the Cavalry beat high at the prospect of a fight from the back of a horse, and with due reference to cavalry tactics even the most sceptical admitted that there "might be something doing at last." Attention was first drawn to the point of the impending attack by the German gain at Friese very early in the year, a gain not contested by the French, who were painfully aware that the marshy nature of the ground rendered the position a most uncomfortable holding. The actual line of the river was a bad spot for the junction of the French and British, so the French took over both banks of the river, ceding their line in Artois. The French Corps selected to seize the vital Somme positions was the Twentieth Corps, and included the glorious "Iron" Division. The Germans distinctly scored in that while the Allies were on low, and more than muddy ground, they were on the slopes of the ridge, on whose summit were the three important railway centres of Péronne, Bapaume and Chaulnes. The strength of the German position was immense, their defences existing to a depth of six miles; from the ridge the whole battle area could be dominated, while the utmost advantage had been taken of the vast and ancient cellarage in the town. However impregnable the position might seem, French and British proposed to attack it, hoping to strike at the important railhead and

thus at St. Quentin itself. It was to be no sudden battering-ram attack, but the French and British Armies, working as it were in *échelon*, were to deliver alternate hammer blows at the German position, and bend themselves towards their objective. The plan, as simple as it was probably sound, was an elaboration of Van Haessler's tactics at Verdun. June had only run a few days when a bombardment was opened over the whole front, directed with special vigour against the reserve positions, the enemy's front-line troops being harassed by continual raiding, and his observation balloons being counted "down and out." The energies of the French and British Staff were largely employed in improving the lines of communication, fleets of lorries being massed and railways and roads being improved and extended. On July 1st, with the Household Cavalry at Bonnay, the attack became general on the La Boisselle, Fricourt, Mannetz front. The British Fourth Army, under Rawlinson, consisted of the Seventh, Eighth, Tenth, Third, Fifteenth, Thirteenth Corps, nearly all new formations, and while to the north the Germans were able to hold up the attacking troops, having their artillery massed for the purpose, southward the line was pushed slowly forward day by day, Montauban, Fricourt, and a dozen other villages seeing some desperate fighting, notably some fierce German counter-attacks, which, although not without their measure of success, entailed terrible German mortality. The new British Infantry stood the test well. "The British Infantry"—so wrote General Arnim—"has undoubtedly learnt much since the autumn offensive. It shows great dash in the attack, a factor to which immense confidence in its artillery greatly contributes. . . . I must acknowledge the skill with which the British rapidly consolidated their captured positions."

The Third Cavalry Division, which had been shifted

back on July 4th, was, four days later, ordered to saddle up with all speed and hurry to Corbie, where the Seventh Cavalry Brigade bivouacked in a wood on the north bank of the canal. Even here life was not quite without recreation, and one found the Second Life Guards beating their brethren of the First by 7 goals to 1 in the water-polo match, while over the canal the band of the "Iron" Division, now resting, enlivened the proceedings appreciably. A villainous enemy, however, was found in the weather; day in, day out, the rain poured down, and already the Somme mud had earned its gruesome title.

On July 10th, the second phase of the offensive opened, with an attack on the Contalmaison positions. For the first time the British attacked in the new three-wave formation consisting of the actual fighting line, the "moppers-up," and the consolidating troops. By the end of the month not only had Contalmaison and Longueval fallen into our hands, but an area of 24 square miles had been seized and occupied by British and Colonial troops. On July 14th came the story of the charge of the Seventh Dragoon Guards and Deccan Horse through the standing corn of Longueval, and the Germans shook their heads over the adaptability of British mounted troops to action, whether on horse or afoot. The brilliant charge was, however, little more than a flash in the pan, and a strong and steady push was evidently the only possible way of ousting the enemy from what was akin to an actual fortress. All the while the Cavalry—and the Household Cavalry certainly not less than others—were busy by day and often by night, entrenching, constructing ammunition and supply dumps, and doing any of the innumerable jobs which fall to those in immediate support of a desperately fighting force. On August 1st there came a *relâche*, and the Household Cavalry Regiments went about from the Corbie area and marched by

easy stages to their former billets, the Second Life Guards *en route* occupying a farm where Joan of Arc was said to have languished for awhile in durance.

Scarcely arrived in their own areas, the Cavalry resumed training, one of the arts practised being to induce horses to face infantry suddenly emerging from behind cover. Horses were therefore ordered to be exercised in fields from which the corn had been newly reaped, when dismounted men would leap from behind the stacks waving their arms and uttering shouts which they believed to be savagely Teutonic. A week or two of comparative leisure, a little leave snatched, and on September 10th back to the Somme, the Seventh Cavalry Brigade on the first night of the march camping outside the village of Yzeux, the property of a person so magnificent in appearance as to be dubbed by the soldiers "the Duke of France." The "Duke" apparently prided himself on his knowledge of the English tongue, as his domain was sprinkled with English notices, mostly in the form of petition: "Please not to billet here." "This house is lived (*sic*) by two old women." "All decrepit and aged here," were the pathetic reminders to be strictly observed. Once more the Cavalry indulged in sanguine speculation, and as the column neared Bonnay, it was evident that a general concentration of mounted troops was being carried out. Five days later attention was to be switched off the mounted men, and the British Army was to break into Homeric laughter at the appearance—and be open-mouthed over the achievement—of the "tanks," of whose first attack the Household Cavalry were eye-witnesses, as every spare man was sent up, pick and shovel in hand, to follow their redoubtable comrades of the Guards Division. After two days at Bonnay—mostly in the attitude known as "standing to"—the Seventh Cavalry Brigade moved

back to a large plain outside Querrieu, where the chateau had been taken for Rawlinson's Headquarters, and where no less than five Divisions of the British Cavalry were to stick in the mud of indescribable sliminess, horses and men being reduced to forms so bespattered as to be almost unrecognisable. While in England tears were being drawn from feminine eyes in concert rooms and theatres by "Roses are Blooming in Picardy," the troops were tasting to the full of the filthy conditions of Picardy itself. The greatest difficulty was experienced in keeping the horses pegged down, and it was by no means uncommon for a whole troop of horses to pick up its line and walk bodily off into the night. Every morning parties could be seen—and heard—from almost every Cavalry Regiment in the Corps, seeking their lost cattle from camp to camp, and the encampment of Querrieu is registered in memory as "the muddy camp of 1916."

With the dying down of the Battle of the Somme late in September, the Cavalry were withdrawn to an area about Hesdin, the Seventh Cavalry Brigade * having its Headquarters at Fruges, with the First Life Guards grouped around Lains-les-Fressin and the Second Life Guards at Marant. "Soldiering would be all right if it only consisted of the band and the mess ; no (expletive) men or horses !" was the comment of a sometime cornet of Life Guards. A mess is always easy to constitute ; the band presents greater difficulties, but it was determined that a band of some sort must cheer the winter months, and, incidentally, please the inhabitants. A few enthusiasts from "D" Squadron, First Life Guards, persuaded Captain Astor to provide them with mouth-organs, concertinas and drums, and when the sounds emitted from these instruments could no longer be endured, something

* In November General Bertram Portal succeeded General Kennedy in command of the Seventh Brigade.

like a raid was made on other Squadrons for any musical talent, however raw, with the result that a service band, under the baton of an officer's servant, was formed, to the delight of the inhabitants, and the confusion of any one gifted with a musical ear. But in February there arrived from England, under Lieutenant J. Miller, the Band of the Life Guards for a six weeks' stay. Their advent was enthusiastically greeted, and the benefits they bestowed can hardly be over-estimated. The Band played its way round many Regiments, and, in the great hospitals of Etaples, and on one occasion, the memory of which will be handed down to the villagers' children's children, the Regiment paraded for a mounted route march with the "pukka" band reinforced by the service musicians. Never, surely, had the band of a Cavalry Regiment been mounted on such a motley collection of cattle, the horse chosen for the drums being an enormous dead-white quadruped, approximately named "White-wash," who on less glittering occasions bore S.Q.M.C. Keilly to battle.

The winter of 1916-17 was to prove a very busy time for all the mounted troops. Already, however, the Government was feeling Haig's pulse as to whether he would reduce his Cavalry, or convert a large portion of them into dismounted units. All the new theories in support of this plea were trotted out for his inspection, and all were rejected by him. The withdrawal of the Cavalry, the Commander-in-Chief was sure, would in itself be an incentive to an enemy now insensibly weakening, and the Cavalry had a part to play until the very end—and above all, *in* the very end—for which no substitute could be found. Meanwhile, apart from actual Cavalry work, Cavalrymen were kept steadily employed, and it was freely admitted there was something as difficult to define, as impossible to deny, in the training

of a Cavalry soldier which engenders an adaptability for any kind of work, under any sort of conditions. In the Third Cavalry Division, after reducing the horsemen to a minimum, three Cavalry pioneer battalions—numbered Seventh, Eighth and Sixth, according to the Brigades from which they were derived—had been formed in October, and the Seventh Battalion (First and Second Life Guards and Leicester Yeomanry) at once proceeded for a short spell to a camp a few miles east of Albert to take part in the “fatigue” work of making straight the way for the operations of the next year. While thus engaged on their lawful avocations, a blended party of First and Second Life Guards had a little stroke of fortune. Prying about amongst the ruins, some adventurous spirits crept through a hole made by a shell in a brick floor, into a cellar. A casual poke amongst the *débris* which littered the place resulted in the discovery of a sealed bottle, which upon investigation proved to be a fine brand of Cognac. The bottle was found to have a very large number of companions, and in a very short space of time the billets of the Brigade had laid down their own private stocks just before the military police dashed to the scene, to be confronted with only empty bins.

On the return of the Pioneers to the Doullens area on January 30th, 1917, the Cavalry Regiments were all re-formed, and training commenced on a large scale in view of the battle for which they had been “navvying.” Although there was no definite information to hand as to where, and of what dimensions, this battle was to be, it was obvious that something big was in the wind, and training was carried out on special lines, with obviously special intent. On February 1st the Seventh Cavalry Brigade moved for its “finishing” school to an area on the sea-front which embraced the summer resorts—doubtless delightful in summer but bleak and forbidding

in winter—of Millemont and Banck Plage and other villages a mile or two inland. On the march down to the sea the Seventh Brigade saluted the Eighth and saw, to their amazement, that the Blues—admittedly emulating the example of the Tenth Royal Hussars—had collar-chains shining like silver ; the Life Guards, reddening with vexation, at once set about their self-imposed task of removing two and a half years' rust from this item of equipment.

Early in February the High Command woke up to find that the Germans had made a strategic retirement to the Hindenburg line, with the obvious intention of standing fast on the Mouchy-Bapaume Ridge. However able the movement, the German Staff was a little outside its reckoning, and was forced to anticipate its programme. On March 12th the Allies were over the Bapaume Ridge, and a week later were in occupation of Péronne, Nesle, Chaulnes and Roisel ; ten miles of ground had been reclaimed on the forty-five mile front, and 45,000 French civilians were set free. Although the retrograde movement of the enemy had come as a surprise to the Allied Commanders, no alteration was made in their considered plan, and the plan of battle, indeed, became more essential.

CHAPTER IX

ON March 16th, in the Chief of the Staff's room at the War Office, Haig and Nivelle fixed the date of the battle of Arras for the ensuing Easter morning.* "C'est entendu pour le huit ? Oui, le huit." Less than a dozen words, and what hung on them !

By the end of March there was little attempt to conceal the fact that an important action was to be fought, and for the Third Cavalry Division the story was sealed by a letter from the Divisional Commander, which ran :

"Officers must impress on men that when our chance comes we must go 'all out' to make it good. Cavalry is the arm to complete a victory, and so rewards the other arms for their sacrifices and labour.

"Killing Germans is not advocated, if it is easier and quicker to accept their surrender. Men should, however, be reminded that Germans sink hospital ships, poison wells, and commit every possible atrocity, and that the only good Germans are dead Germans."

On the evening of April 8th the Cavalry Corps concentrated some miles west of Arras and was understood to have been selected to be the first mounted Division to advance, with its objective the line Vis-en-Artois-Bovy Notre Dame. The general plan of attack was that the First Army, under Sir Henry Horne, should strike for Vimy Ridge, while Allenby should lead the Third Army on Arras itself. In contrast to the Somme action there was to be but little intensive bombardment, but the artillery was to "open up" on the morning of the attack itself, on the new creeping barrage which had emanated from the fertile brain of the First Army Commander.

* As a matter of fact, the fight was postponed for twenty-four hours.

The Sixth and Eighth Brigades were to deploy respectively south and north of Monchy-Lepreux ; they were to cross the trenches in the Feuchy line, the leading regiments to be east of this line before the capture of Monchy, and later to push on according to plan and occupy outpost positions after dark ; the Seventh Cavalry Brigade was to be in reserve. The attack, originally planned for the 8th, opened at dawn on the 9th, the Canadian Corps going straight for the Vimy Ridge, and piercing during the day the German third line. There were difficulties on the Arras front where German trenches had been dug in the suburbs of the town itself, but eventually the enemy was cleared out of the whole town. The Divisional Commander broke his bivouac at 7.30 and moved off towards Arras, leaving the Seventh Brigade stationary at the west entrance, pleasantly entitled " Dead Man's Corner." The excitement was great ; on its forward march the Brigade had passed through the billets of the reserve Infantry, the men of which had lined the roads and cheered them on. Word was received that the Fourth Corps had almost reached its goal, and that the Blues were over the German original front line. Bertram Portal was now moved into the town and told to halt in the eastern outskirts, where his Brigade remained in drenching rain—which finally gave place to sleet and snow—the whole day and well into the night. In the very early hours of the next morning the Brigade retraced its steps until three kilometres west of Arras, when in pitch darkness and driving snow they turned off the road on to the open plain. Horses were tethered and men lay down huddled together to get what warmth and sleep they might, and when, a few hours later, the iron rations arrived, they were welcomed less for themselves than for their wooden cases, which were seized, broken up, and set alight in great stacks, round which gathered swarms

of men presenting strange caricatures of the popular conception of the Household Cavalry. Meanwhile the Infantry, working between Vimy Ridge and the Scarpe River, bounded forward and captured Fampoux in what has been described as one of the pivoting successes of the whole campaign. A wedge 5,000 yards deep was driven into the German lines, thereby outflanking his vital Monchy position, and easing to a great extent the Third Army situation ; in this historic movement the Household Battalion bore an honourable part. The Third Cavalry Division was now hurried up, the Seventh Brigade passing through Arras soon after noon and emerging into the open by way of a hastily prepared Cavalry track—or rather one which so announced itself by notices painted in blue and white ; as the Life Guards crossed the old front line the Blues could be seen deploying for an advance through Monchy. The Seventh Brigade halted behind a ridge, dismounting, and linking horses to witness a highly picturesque incident. A British plane, flying low over the whole line of guns, dropped a message for the Artillery H.Q., and, as it seemed, within a minute the gun horses came thudding up, hooked on, wheeled about, and the whole line of guns galloped over the ridge and into the blue, moving with as much precision as if it were an Aldershot review. There came another day and night of bitter cold and weary waiting, made even more disagreeable by a lack of drinking water. In a set of enemy orders captured were found these refined instructions in case of a German retirement : “ The last retiring Cavalry and Cyclists will make the water undrinkable by dung, etc., placed in readiness within immediate reach of the wells.” To the lasting credit of the R.E. be it said that the town water supply was before nightfall brought through pipes to tanks within easy reach of the fighting troops.

Shortly before dusk the Brigadier received orders to withdraw to bivouac on Arras Race-course. All ranks were greatly heartened by the news. They had visions of grand stands, offices and loose boxes, cover from the ever-falling snow. Never were men doomed to suffer more bitter disappointment. The race-course was a bleak, bare plain, with but one tiny hut-like structure on its surface, and even the posts round the course, to which the men ran for wood, were of concrete. This was destined to be the worst night of all. Men scratched holes in the ground and slept, or dozed. During the night the Brigade was roused to assist the bruised and broken Eighth Brigade to bivouac.

Let us see something of the Blues in the battle. On April 5th they marched from Fruges to Gouy en Artois, and four days later came the Divisional advance. From the concentration point the 8th Brigade was to move down the Cavalry track to the "brown line," but the "brown line" was denied to the Infantry.

On the afternoon of the 10th a move was made to the western slopes of Orange Hill, and some of the 10th and Essex were badly caught by machine guns when reconnoitring towards Monchy, the Brigade bivouac being continually shelled through the night.

By 8 a.m. on the 11th, Monchy being reported as in our Infantry's hands, the 10th and Essex tried to take up the high ground north of it, but machine-gun fire compelled them to converge on Monchy, where they put the eastern slopes in defence. Bulkeley Johnson then decided to make the northern edge of Monchy his forward report centre, and riding forward bade the Blues follow to the north-west hollow. Was the gallant Brigadier a little careless of his own value? Before any report could reach him he was beyond all human report, and the Blues when traversing the summit of Orange Hill were so

heavily attacked by Cavalry as to be compelled back to their previous post. Tweedmouth was now summoned to take charge of the Brigade,* and the command of the Regiment fell for a few days to Londonderry—the pair being soon to be awarded the D.S.O. Through a long, long morning the Blues were working and watching, numbed with cold and penetrated by bullets, until in the afternoon the A Squadron was ordered to reinforce the Brigade in Monchy, and in so doing came under an intense barrage ; at 5 o'clock the message came that the 37th Infantry Brigade would relieve the troops in Monchy that night, Lieutenant Rowley and Lieutenant Sale were ordered forthwith to take parties in with ammunition and stretchers, Corrie being in charge of all the Brigade casualties.

The reliefs were effected before dawn, when the forbidding race-course was a temporary lodging before a return to Gouy, and thence to billets at Aix en Izzart.

One must draw also on the graphic diary of Captain Buckmaster for the Blues' part in a dreary fight :—

Friday, 13th.

8th Brigade left Gouy about 10 Easter Monday, and without much delay halted on Arras Race Course, where whole Division halted. Some shells fell close, the first intimation we got that an enemy existed. Rode on after 2 hours through Arras. Heard rumours that the Infantry had taken 6,000 prisoners and all objectives early that morning. We halted at beginning of Cavalry track made that morning by working parties following up the attacking infantry. Heard there Shirley Falcke had been badly wounded—he has been up with the Blues dismounted party helping making cavalry track. It was very cold waiting there and eventually we crossed the railway and got on to the track. You can imagine it was not very good going, but most interesting passing over the battlefield of the morning. A tank had

* Shortly after Colonel Seymour, Scots Greys, was appointed Brigadier, and Tweedmouth resumed the Regimental command, which he was to hold unrelaxingly, and to his undying credit, to the end of the war. Gerard was among those dangerously wounded, and his squadron went to Meyrick.

stuck on German front line, the first I had seen. It was then late and getting dark so we knew it was hardly likely much would happen before morning. We halted on left of Tilloy and pegged down for the night. Harrison-Stanley-Rowley-Tottie-Gilbey and I dug a hole and got into it to sleep, but before we got to sleep the snow came down. I never closed my eyes, my feet were too cold, and I had only a biscuit or two since breakfast. Réveillé at 2 and back we rode to Arras Race Course. After a long wait, as both road and Cavalry track were blocked with traffic.

It was still snowing hard and beastly. Talked to 2nd Life Guards who had heard 8th Cav. Brigade had broken through. I told them it was not time. Spencer and Galloway arrived with D Squadron mess cart—a wonderful performance and gave us some hot soup, worth untold gold. We saddled up again 11 a.m. and rode straight back to last night's ground. Cavalry track now with snow and traffic in places up to horses' hocks. Many falling. Halted some time and rode on to ridge by Orange Hill—a wonderful sight—the whole division spread out on the snow-covered ridge, stayed there till 8 p.m. and then pegged down for the night. Rested. No sleep again in a shell hole with Harrison-Stanley and was well huddled up. That was Tues. night. It was snowing like hell and bitterly cold. Perhaps it was a godsend as the horses were getting no water and had it been hot could not have stayed the course. We were shelled all night and lost many horses and five hit in Rowley's Troop, the 10th lost 6 men and several horses. We were saddled up by daybreak. I was so stiff with the cold that Smith my groom had to lift me into the saddle. It was beastly cold. Waited on a bit and then heard Monchy was taken, from passing wounded infantry. No food but biscuits and a little bully. The Essex and 10th sent out a squadron each and later both regiments advanced over the ridge by Orange Hill and then we got the order to mount. Orders were given for us to go through the gap in half-sections, then form sections when over the trenches and form line of troop columns. The ground was very heavy to gallop over. A bomb struck by a horse went off in front of my troop. What impressed me most was how well my mare was going after short rations, no water and starved with the cold after a warm stable and no rugs. It was extremely heavy going and there was a mass of shell holes on the plateau. Suddenly we came into a tremendous barrage. Bulkeley Johnson was killed by a M.G. bullet. He was standing in a trench watching proceedings. Gerard and Back were both wounded, the former in seven places and his horse split straight up as if cut in half with a razor. The Brigadier being killed, Dudley Hardy gave the order file about and back we came to the starting point. The Colonel was now in charge of the Brigade and Londonderry, who had been *liaison* officer to Division, took command. Gilbey and I asked him

if we could go and look for Gerard who was missing, but he said there were plenty of our Infantry between the ridge and Monchy and would not allow us. Later George Greaves was allowed to go out with three stretcher bearers to look for him, but did not find him as he had already been brought in by Gourlay. Greaves, however, found his horse, as I said before, split in half. The first thing Gerard said to Gourlay was, "Why, I gave you four days up at Doullens." "That's all right," said Gourlay. The Essex and 10th were badly cut up in Monchy. Phillip Hardwick Airlie Greenwood, Wynn-Maitland wounded and George Dawson Damer killed. Essex Yeomanry had 8 officer casualties.

The battle was over, and in the morning the Seventh and Eighth Brigades moved to near Simencourt for a week's rest before marching to billets round about Hesdin.

The battle of Arras, although checked by the frenzied April weather, was not poor in results. Both the Vimy Ridge and Monchy positions were ours and the line was advanced to clear the city of Arras. The G.O.C.-in-C., in a special order of the day stated : "The Cavalry Corps and Corps Mounted Troops have taken fullest advantage of such openings for Cavalry action as the course of the operation has so far afforded."

Fitful fighting went on, and there were important sallies on the 23rd on Rœux and Pelves and on the 25th on Achéville, Ailleux and Oppy, after which the early summer months were generally and comparatively quiet.

APPENDIX

The exact tactical scheme of the attack of April 9th—if somewhat coloured by the methods of Nivelle's attack at Verdun—was largely shaped from Haig's plans as developed on the Somme. The advance from Arras—which offered special advantages as a jumping-off place—was planned to proceed by distinct stages and the troops were given a series of objectives corresponding with the German defence lines which, with distinct intervals, were to be taken and consolidated successively. Monchy-le-Preux Hill, which stands as sentry over the eastern approaches to Arras, and the Vimy Ridge were of course the two great *desiderata*. The final objective for the opening day included the German third line astride the Scarpe, and this once passed, the only prepared line of German defence was the Drocourt-Quéant line, which had not been altogether set in order. It was coolly calculated that success—and success of course meant cavalry co-operation—would turn the Hindenburg line from the north and facilitate a forward move on Cambrai, very much as actually occurred some eighteen months later. Nor is it amiss to remember that Haig was first and foremost to foresee the cardinal importance of capturing the Vimy Ridge before proceeding to any operations in France; this capture had been decided on by him in consultation with Joffre at Chantilly the previous year, and curiously enough the decision was strongly opposed by Nivelle, to whom an attempt was made, at the Calais Conference in February, 1917, to subordinate the British Commander-in-Chief.

CHAPTER X

THE mud of France and Flanders had anyhow done nothing to dull the glamour of the Household Cavalry, and through the summer of 1916 their barracks in London and Windsor were still besieged by aspirants to military fame, for the most part superfine in physique and character. The supply of men far outstripped horses available to mount them. How to use to the best advantage the fine material which was continuously coming to hand? The Chief of the Imperial General Staff took council with the Colonel of the First Life Guards, and together they had audience of the Sovereign to submit the idea of a Household Battalion. The suggestion found favour, and on August 30th the G.O.C. London district was writing to the Colonel of the Reserve Regiments.

I had an interview with the King yesterday about the proposed Household Infantry Battalion. He fully approves and it is his distinct wish that it be formed as quickly as possible from the three Regiments; men to be mixed up, in four Companies, Officers to come in equally from the three Regiments as we proposed.

He approves of the Badge to be the Royal Cipher within the Garter, surmounted by the Crown. I have taken steps about this. It will be, of course, submitted to the King and also the "H.B." be placed on the men's shoulders. This will also be submitted.

Having gone carefully through the list of officers he approves of Captain Wyndham Portal being appointed to Command, and this selection I have therefore put forward to the Army Council.

I have got the order from the Council for the formation of the Battalion, and I have issued an order that they concentrate at Knightsbridge Barracks under Sir George Holford (for convenience) on Friday. All other details to be left.

I have suggested that Coggins—R.C.M. First Life Guards, be brought home as Quartermaster. This will be the only exception to the Battalion being formed from the Reserve Regiments.

I do not think there is anything more to be said. I hope you will agree in all this. His Majesty was extremely strong about it.

On November 8th and 9th, Portal took his Battalion in two parties to France and joined up with the Tenth Brigade, Fourth Division—his men quickly asserting themselves by gaining second place in a bayonet-fighting competition. The Battalion entered the trenches for the first time on December 8th, when it relieved, in reserve, the First Battalion Zouaves on the Combles-Priey front. Its "breaking-in" was entrusted to the First Battalion Warwicks, whose place two days later they took over. The Somme mud was now in all its richness, and on the way up to the communication trenches forty men had to be dug out. In the line itself it was almost impossible to move, and part of the system had to be held in posts, the men being often so exhausted that they had to be sent back in 'buses when their tour was over. The war took early, as well as full, toll of the Household Battalion, and in the first week there were nine casualties among the officers alone. The Fourth Division remained in the sector until the middle of January. The line was fairly quiet, but its conditions were atrocious, and friend and foe were too busy in improving the trenches to trouble each other beyond a few occasional quasi-courtesy shots. The trenches themselves were broken down, and in many places unprotected by wire, and in the absence of communication trenches, reliefs had to be carried out above ground; whale-oil, massage, and a continual flow of dry socks were impotent to prevent constant cases of trench feet. In mid-January, 1917, the Household Battalion took over the ground occupied by the Thirty-second French Regiment, and a fortnight later, was back on the Somme at Bouchavesnes, full of vitality, but with its total trench strength of "other ranks" reduced to 276, including band and servants. The Fourth Division was

one of those selected for the Arras offensive, and after a fortnight's "rest," the Battalion took road early in March for the Third Army front. Here and now it was to show its Household Cavalry traditions and training, for be it remembered that, under a thin crust of foot drill, every man remained a cavalryman at heart. The preliminary instructions issued before the battle were precise and prophetic of the serious business to hand. "All officers are to be dressed exactly as the men, sticks will not be carried, and the pack will be left behind in camp." The Fourth Division being reserve to the Seventeenth Corps was, in the second phase of the battle, to pass through the Ninth Division, seize the German second line and the village of Fampoux, and sit down in the "green line." The Reserve Brigade, which was to consolidate captured positions and support either of its advance brigades, comprised the Household Battalion, the First Battalion Warwicks, Second Battalion Seaforths, and First Battalion Royal Irish Fusiliers. The whole affair is dismissed in the Battalion's war diary with: "The Battalion carried out the scheme of work laid down." This is precisely what it did do, under stress and driving snow, and at a cost of four officers and 166 other ranks. The Battalion was relieved on April 20th, refitted, given a little more training, and on May 3rd, dedicated to a new attack on the Scarpe River. Portal was told that with the Warwicks he was to provide the assault troops for the Brigade, and that the two objectives, known as the Black and Blue lines, were to be pounced upon by the first and second waves of troops respectively. The southern boundary of the Battalion ran through the village of Rœux itself, and the area included some well-known strong points, such as the cemetery and chemical works. At zero hour, 3.45 a.m., the darkness was increased by a heavy smoke barrage, and to maintain

direction was next to impossible. The attacking troops plunged forward and were lost to view. The first wounded brought the report to Battalion H.Q. that while one or two parties had crossed the Rœux-Gavelle Road the greater number had been held up by intense machine-gun fire in front of the cemetery; the Somerset Light Infantry, attacking a few minutes later and a little more to the right, had made but little way. The proposed formation of the right defensive flank which was to await the advance, was deleted by the arrest of the Somersets, and at 5.30 a.m. the news came back that the one remaining officer in the line, Second-Lieutenant Barker, had been forced to withdraw as best he could from the original front line. Reinforcements were sent up, and a small patch of captured ground was consolidated, but a party of some fifty men of the Brigade, reported to be holding out on the road, was cut off entirely. A German counter-attack near the cemetery was dispersed by our artillery in the afternoon, and after dusk stray parties of the Battalion crept in from No-Man's-Land, the casualties—mainly due to machine-gun fire—amounting to over 230. After a few days largely devoted to bombing practice, the attack was resumed, the Seventeenth Corps being chiefly concerned in gaining the lines round Rœux cemetery. Portal, on the left of the Brigade, was to attack the cemetery itself, backed by the Seaforths, and with the Royal Irish on his right. The attack was to be made in one wave, going straight through to the objectives on the east side of the building, where the Battalion was at once to dig in. The Seaforths were to be responsible for the clearance of all dug-outs and buildings, leaving the actual assault troops free to advance on the more evident enemy positions, and to gain ground of first-rate importance. At 7.30 p.m. on the 12th, the Battalion attacked in such good order that Major Kirk-

wood, who was then in charge, could write in his diary : " Scarcely any one seemed out of place, and the line seemed faultless up to the time I lost them to view in the smoke." In little more than an hour, the left of the Battalion was where it wanted to be, and was making good, but the right and right-centre, held up in the gardens round the cemetery, were being enfiladed by machine-gun fire from the neighbouring houses, the position being further complicated by a gap left by the R.I.'s ; an exiguous company of the Warwicks, ordered to reinforce the threatened flank, was mowed down, while another company of the same Battalion was endeavouring to link up the Household Battalion's left flank with the Hampshires to the north. Meanwhile the sadly depleted platoons of the Household Battalion fought stubbornly on until the right centre had made its way into line, although against the buildings at the cemetery the right flank could do nothing. The commanding officer, however, was positive that the entire objective could be reached, and at 2.45 a.m. the remainder of the Royal Warwicks and fifty men of the King's Own, who had been placed at his disposal, were pushed up, and the line established. The buildings round the cemetery were effectively credited to the Seaforths, and, at 6.30 a.m., Kirkwood could say he had completed his task, and *finis* could be written to a very creditable chapter in the Battalion's short but distinguished story. The operations had cost the Battalion four officers and ninety-three other ranks, or nearly half of their strength.

The next day the Battalion, relieved by the Seaforths, proceeded by motor lorry to Houvin-Houvigneul, where it was reinforced by a powerful draft of nearly 300 men, warmly congratulated by the Divisional General, and thanked by Allenby, who was on the eve of earning further fame in the East. For its share in the engage-

ments at Fampoux and Rœux the Battalion received a total of nine military medals, while its medical officer, Captain J. F. Sloan, was awarded the military cross.

A short month at Houvin-Houvigneul, and Portal and his men were back at Arras. But the month was not spent in idleness; a day for overdue sleep, a day for cleaning clothes and polishing equipment, and on all the other days the Battalion, lifted to a strength of 28 officers and 685 other ranks, had fairly stiff training under the eye, moreover, of various specialists. At Arras, where a fortnight of June was spent, another draft of 122 men was received. These drafts were welcome, but the drain on the Reserve Regiments was becoming serious. True, there were men enlisting for the Household Battalion itself, but the genuine Life Guard and Blue figured largely in the parties sent out, and the question was becoming acute as to whether it would be possible for the reservoirs at home to continue the supply of combatants for the Battalion and still fulfil the primary purpose of keeping at maximum strength the actual Regiments of Household Cavalry which, with any resumption of open warfare, would be largely called upon.

On the Arras front the Battalion was posted through July and August, and was supremely successful in securing intelligence needed by the Higher Command.* A special note was deservedly made of the solitary reconnaissances of Corporal-of-Horse Hamill, who night after night would patrol the north bank of the Scarpe River east of Rœux Bridge, with the special object of discovering possible crossings for future operations, and with the incidental result of locating several enemy posts. On the night of July 15th-16th, this intrepid N.C.O. and four men swam

* On the night of July 11th Second-Lieutenant Gibb managed to establish three posts 50 yards in front of the line, which, the next day, were pushed forward 50 yards more.

the river with Second-Lieutenant Davis, to be greeted by an angry but innocuous burst of rifle-fire, and to be very awkwardly hung up by the entanglements with which the bank was heavily protected. Despite fire and wire, however, the party secured—and swam back with—the information required, Hamill a little later on being awarded a bar to the Military Medal he had gained in the April fighting. On September 1st the Battalion observed its birthday. A morning ceremonial parade was followed by the burial of Captain Pember, who had been killed on May 3rd, but whose body had only just been recovered ; the afternoon was given over to inter-company sports and a festival tea for the men. The blending of grave and gay had nothing in it of callousness. Death, often in hideous guise, was by now a familiar figure, but no comrade died unmourned. To dwell on death, or to brood over all that sadly happened would have been to quench the spirit which enabled men to win through hell to final victory ; but often a mask of indifference had to be assumed, and at night in the circle round the fire when song and jest died down and the phrase “ D’you remember . . . ” leapt to the lips, many a man thanked the darkness that his companions could not read what was written on his face, and crept away to his blanket with a muttered “ Poor old so-and-so ” than which no *requiem* could be more eloquent.

With the early autumn came the Passchendaele push, that action, terrible in its cost of human life, which was denounced by the politicians at home as useless slaughter, and defended by the soldiers on the spot as absolutely necessary, not only for its strategic value, but to give exhausted France time and opportunity to recover her breath and steady her forces. The Fourth Division moved north, leaving Arras on September 3rd, and after putting a finishing touch to training in back areas, was

N

embodied in the Fourteenth Corps, part of the Fifth Army, for the offensive.

The attack was to be delivered by the whole of the Fifth and Second Armies on October 4th, and Portal was bidden to be in reserve for the opening phase of the battle. The Battalion followed the attacking troops, digging in as they went, and continued thus until the 10th, when they relieved the Second Essex, joining the Twelfth Brigade in readiness for a new attack on October 12th, which was to be delivered on Requette Farm, near Poelcappelle. Here they were detailed as the right assaulting Battalion, with the First Royal Warwicks on its left, the First King's Own in support, and the First Rifle Brigade in reserve. On the right of the Battalion was the Seventh Battalion Royal West Kents, forming part of the assaulting troops of the Eighteenth Division; two objectives were laid down to be known as the green and red lines respectively. The Battalion Commander believed, and believed rightly, that the main danger point would be the village of Poelcappelle. If the Eighteenth Division should fail—as it might well fail—to take this position, his right flank would be in the air and a defensive flank would have to be formed immediately. Portal must strain every nerve to seize Requette Farm, which he could then use as a pivot, and in support of his right flank he sent a couple of machine guns which had been allotted to him. At 4 a.m. on October 12th the Battalion was assembled to move forward an hour and a half later. The engagement was to justify precisely Portal's surmise. While his left had gained its first objective within half an hour, it was not until nearly 7 a.m. that he received news from the right, when the wounded company commander reported that although his men had arrived within fifty yards of the coveted farm the Eighteenth Division had lost touch and the right company was under heavy fire from

Poelcappelle ; the proposed defensive flank was therefore being formed. The left continued to advance, and by 6.50 a.m. the right had secured the farm with its garrison of 4 machine guns and 26 men. The farm consisted of a small, broken-down pill-box which had been used as a dressing-station, but which was valuable to the Germans because protected on its western side by a marsh. Our men found themselves under fire from a trench close by on the south-west, and by 9.30 a.m. the only officers left in action were Lieutenant Davis on the right, Lieutenant Martin in the centre and Captain Cazalet on the left—all three having originally been in the support company. In spite of this, another strong point had been taken east of Landing Farm, and the right defensive flank had been established. Throughout the morning the Household Battalion clung to Requette Farm ; reduced to a fraction of their original strength and their Vickers guns fragments of scrap-iron, they refused to surrender the prize they had won the while it was difficult for Battalion Headquarters to know what was going on, and runner after runner was sniped from Poelcappelle.

Not until 3 p.m., when the farm was surrounded, except for a narrow passage on the north-west, and when the intelligence officers had pronounced it wholly untenable, did the gallant little garrison consent to retire, and then only a matter of fifty yards. An hour later came the message: "Requette Farm must be captured by this evening ; you will arrange with the Rifle Brigade to support you." Two platoons of Rifles did indeed arrive, but even thus Cazalet's handful of men was wholly and physically unable to attack, and had indeed to exhaust its last efforts in beating off a counter-attack, with the help of the Rifles, which was launched later in the afternoon. In the dark of the next morning, but later than arranged, the Second Northumberland Fusiliers came to

relieve the line, if line it can be termed, held by scattered groups of hungry and thirsty Warwicks, King's Own and "Households." The relief was slowly effected, the relievers being nearly worn out themselves ; while one company was sent to the sorely-tried Cazalet, the Commanding Officer, Adjutant and Regimental-Corporal-Major of the Household Battalion each took one of the three remaining companies, the last-named working on a compass bearing only, and the relief was complete by 9.30 a.m. of the 13th. Of the officers apart from Headquarters, only Cazalet and Blackburn came out of action with the Battalion, and there was no Corporal-Major nor Corporal-of-Horse to say "adsum." With total casualties of over 400, the Battalion had been successful in taking an objective of over 600 yards. "I cannot speak too highly," Portal reported, "of the conduct of the officers and men, as they were tired when they went in, and wet through, and subject to heavy shelling twenty-four hours before the start. Captain Cazalet's work is deserving of the highest praise. He led the attack with great gallantry and reorganised the whole of the line himself. I should not think a finer bit of work has been done by any one during this war. I should like to mention the work done by my Adjutant and R.S.M. in helping with a very difficult relief. Our officer and N.C.O. casualties speak for themselves and show with what great gallantry they all helped to gain a very difficult objective." *

By the end of October the Battalion was again at Arras, quartered in Schramm Barracks and stiffened by two drafts of nearly 500. Two months were spent in the usual routine of trench duty on the Cambrai Road sector, the monotony of which was relieved on December

* A message of thanks, couched in no perfunctory terms, was received from General Gough, Commander of the Fifth Army.

21st by a little episode, when a party of the enemy made a determined raid on a certain Sap 12, a position lightly held by the Household Battalion. The enemy had a warm reception from the British trenches, and only a round half-dozen skipped into the sap, where they seized an unfortunate private, with intent to bear him off to bondage. Lance-Corporal Davis charged down upon the marauders, killing one with a bayonet, and forcing the others to beat a hurried retreat, for which plucky bit of work he received the D.C.M. Just before the New Year Major Cunningham was transferred from being Second-in-Command of the Battalion to command the First Battalion of the King's Own Regiment, which he subsequently led with consummate skill, of a piece with his conspicuous bravery ; his translation was the forerunner of the disbandment of the Battalion itself, which was no longer being fed from the Household Cavalry. The standard of recruits was still pretty high, and the work and worth of the Battalion were a theme of universal admiration and of expert approval. But the microscopic economy which is so often the companion of lavish outlay asserted itself, and the fact that the Household Battalion cost the Allies a few more pence a day per man than was paid to their comrades in other infantry formations, was to bring about their dissolution. From the G.O.C. Fourth Division came some winged words, but his protest was all in vain, and on January 27th the Battalion, as such, entered the line for the last time with a strength of 18 officers and 424 other ranks. Their final tour of duty was marked by the impassibility of the communication trenches, owing to the thaw ; the opposing trenches, it was understood, were in an even worse plight, and many working parties were dispersed by our Lewis-gun fire, while an attempt to fraternise by waving handkerchiefs met with an equally stern response.

182 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

On February 8th the King's farewell order was read out on parade, and on parade again the next day, General Mathieson came to tell them what he thought of them. The disbandment which was completed by the break-up of Battalion Headquarters on the 16th, was proceeded with thus :—

(1) The "duration of war" mess, with Lieutenants E. N. de Geizer, J. S. Ellis, J. A. G. Roberts, A. W. Brawn, and Second-Lieutenants J. G. T. Burchell, C. D. Whitehouse and G. T. Pelly proceeded for transfer to various regiments of Foot Guards.

(2) Forty-six candidates for commissions were despatched to England.

(3) Lieutenants A. R. Gilbey and V. H. Sandford, with 41 serving N.C.O.'s and men were entrained for Rouen, there to be held as reinforcements for their respective Cavalry Regiments.

Farewell Message of His Majesty to the Household Battalion.

York Cottage,
Sandringham,
Norfolk.

Colonel Portal, Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of the Household Battalion.

It is with feelings of sympathy and regret that I communicate this farewell order.

Military policy, however, demands the absorption of the Household Battalion into other Units of my Army.

Though the career of the Battalion has been short, the gallant conduct of all ranks on the field of Battle has earned for it an honoured name amongst Infantry Regiments.

As your Colonel-in-Chief, I have followed with pride and admiration your doings at the front.

I know what you have suffered, and superior commanders have testified to the splendid services rendered by officers and men.

You can rest assured that as an Infantry Battalion formed from the First and Second Life Guards and the Royal Horse Guards, you have added yet another chapter to the grand traditions of my Household Cavalry.

(Sgd.) GEORGE R.I.

26th December, 1917.

Farewell Message of Corps Commander to the Household Battalion.

O.C. Household Battalion.

I wish to express to you and all ranks under your command the intense regret which we all feel in the disbandment of your splendid Battalion.

The smartness, discipline, and soldierly spirit displayed by the Battalion throughout its services have been worthy of its name, an example to all. The Battalion has fought nobly, and has made for itself a reputation which will live in history. It is a matter of lasting regret to all those who have known it that the exigencies of the service should require its disbandment.

If anything could reflect more credit on the Officers and men, it is the loyal manner in which they have accepted the decision. That Loyalty is the highest possible example of discipline and soldierly spirit, and all ranks may well be proud of it. I know that as individuals they will continue to show the same spirit in their new units, and so continue to preserve the name and reputation of the Household Battalion untarnished.

I wish you and all ranks good-bye and good luck.

CHARLES FERGUSON,

Lt. General,

Commanding XVII. Corps.

9th February, 1918.

Farewell Message of Fourth Divisional Commander to the H.B.

Lieut.-Colonel PORTAL, Officers, Warrant Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and men of the Household Battalion.

1. This is to me as it must be to you, a sad occasion. You have heard in the farewell order which your King and Colonel-in-Chief has been pleased to forward to you, the reason for your disbandment, and it is, as you know, due to no fault of your own, but to the military policy of our country.

2. You were raised on September 1st, 1916, and it was in November of the same year that you came to this Division. Your first experience in the trenches at Sailly Sailisel was as trying an ordeal as any Battalion has ever been called upon to endure, but you rose superior to the worst enemy of the soldier, the mud of a shell-destroyed battlefield, and laid the foundation of your reputation for grit and determination during the winter in the SOMME VALLEY.

3. In the Battle of ARRAS in April, 1917, you were conspicuous for the fighting qualities shown at the time when the Division as a whole fought for longer periods in the line without relief than others under similar conditions.

4. The capture of RÈUX VILLAGE in May, 1917, is a feat of arms that will live in the history of the Army as an example of the determination which 14 days of shelling and heavy losses were unable to weaken.

184 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

5. During the succeeding period of trench warfare in the valley of the SCARPE you were always the first to undertake any work, whether in improving our own defences or shaking those of the enemy.

6. It is, however, in the Battle of FLANDERS in October last, that you proved to the World your sterling worth. Working for others in the initial stages under heavy and continuous shell fire, you were then called upon to take your place in the front line. Your attack on October 12th was successful, although that of the troops on your right flank failed, gallant though effort was. You were undaunted by the difficulties of the situation. By your soldierly behaviour you held what you gained, and restored the situation on your flank toward POELCAPPELLE. This feat of skill and endurance in the mud of FLANDERS was a fitting climax to your former deeds.

7. Since then you have been employed on the ARRAS front and your work has been of the very best and an example to all others.

8. You have heard the farewell message of your King and Colonel-in-Chief and it is only as your Divisional Commander that I venture to address you. From my heart I thank you for the gallantry and determination you have shewn.

9. To you, Colonel PORTAL, and to all other ranks under your command, I offer my deepest sympathy. I know full well how much is due to you, Colonel PORTAL, for the high state of efficiency in which this Battalion now is.

10. You must all accept this decision with the same spirit which you have shewn throughout your short but successful career, and you must remember that in a great war like this, changes come quickly, and must be accepted cheerfully, each one knowing he has done his best.

11. Although not under my command, I would like to add a word of thanks to those at home in the Reserve Battalion, who have worked so hard to provide you with drafts. The standard has been excellent and due to their untiring energy.

12. To those of you who are going to take your place in other Units, I ask you to take with you the remembrance of the reputation you have won, and to continue to show the same qualities that have enabled the HOUSEHOLD BATTALION, during its only too short career, to establish itself in a very prominent position amongst other Battalions of the 4th Division, composed of what some people are pleased to call the "Old Contemptibles."

13. I thank you all for the real good work you have done and for the gallant way in which you have fought whilst under my command. No words of praise are too good for you, and in whatever position you may each be called on to serve, I wish you the very best of luck.

(Sgd.) T. G. MATHIESON,
Maj.-Gen. Cmmdg. 4th Division.

9th February, 1918.

CHAPTER XI

WITH the close of the battle of Arras something like a hush ran along the front to be broken in June when the great Plumer-engineered explosion at Messines tore the earth, rent the sky, blew the German defence to pieces and the German defenders to atoms, and restored Wytschaette, Hollebeke, and Klein Zillebeke as well as Messines to our hands.

The summer months were largely spent in consolidating what we had snatched around Arras and in the Somme district, and in organising the vital lines of communication in the devastated regions.

This country contrasted sharply with any previously occupied with our troops. There were no civilians within miles of the lines, those liberated by the German retirement having been evacuated by the British.

Men were inured to the dreadful emptiness of Ypres, but Ypres was in the danger zone, and every day was punctuated by dropping shells. Péronne and Bapaume were nearly as safe as Paris or London, and the empty streets, with the rubble of war pushed back among the ruins, seemed the *ne plus ultra* of desolation.

It was the work of the early summer months to render this desert habitable by soldiery. Large army stores and canteens were opened at centres, railheads were instituted, and the least tortured houses were cleared to serve as billets.

It was to this devastated area that the Cavalry were now to travel. The miles of open country between Péronne and the line were in many places knee-deep in

grass ; there were few hedges, and no civilians, and horses could be grazed on the rich meadowland with no land-owner to forbid, while the men could be free to hold the front in the Epehy district.

The Third Cavalry Division left its billets in the Dompierre-Douriez area on May 12th, and marched by easy stages to Tincourt, some miles east of Péronne. Civilisation was left behind at Cerisy, and for months the soldiers would see no civilian nor any house in repair. A bivouac was formed at Tincourt, and a large dismounted party sent into the line at Epehy for a spell of the easiest and least deadly trench warfare that was to come within experience. The horses at Tincourt had a royal time. For watering order purposes they were tied in half sections on either side of a long rope ; the few men left in charge then mounted horses at intervals down the column and the whole moved off. Every afternoon the horses were taken out of camp, knee-hobbled, and turned loose, and the faithful few, mounting their own steeds, loped around in the fashion of cowboys on range duties. When grazing was finished the loose horses were herded into camp and there secured.

It was a period of ease and contentment. The weather was excellent, and life, whether in the trenches or with the horses, could hardly be termed strenuous. Leave, too, that many men had waited two years or so for, came through with strange regularity. The Brigade finally left the area on July 3rd, with their share of a note of praise for the cavalry work in the area. Major-General Peyton, Military Secretary to the Commander-in-Chief, wrote to the G.O.C. Cavalry Corps :—

“ The Commander-in-Chief directs me to convey to you and to all ranks of the Cavalry Corps his pleasure at the report received on the excellent state of the defences recently handed over by them.

"He considers that it reflects the greatest possible credit on all concerned, and that the best traditions of the British Cavalry are being maintained."

An easy march brought the Seventh Brigade to Haute Vente on July 17th for a stay of six weeks rendered interesting by the presence of the Portuguese H.Q. at St. Venant and a little uncomfortable by the proximity of a large French munition factory which perpetually attracted German aeroplanes. At the Divisional Rifle Meeting at Langhen, Lieut. Gilbey's Troop of A Squadron took a first prize in the Troop Competition, A Squadron being also first in a competition for teams of six young soldiers. At Brigade Mounted Sports, in addition to individual successes, the First Life Guards won the prize for the best-limbered waggon, and the Second that for G. S. Waggon, the same vehicles being again first at the Cavalry Corps Horse Show. In September the Life Guards were at Pernes for a fortnight, going thence to Cambrai Chatelaine.

When not required by its own Brigade the Ninety-seventh M.G. Squadron (composed of the M.G. Sections of Life Guards and Blues) was constantly called upon to help infantry divisions in the line: the merits of the Squadron were freely admitted among machine-gun formations, and the Major-General commanding the Fifteenth Highland Division rejoiced openly to have it under him, alluding to it as "a highly trained, efficient unit in which all ranks were most cheerful under great discomfort." Early in October, fighting, fast and furious, once more broke out in the Ypres sector and Zonnebeke, Zillebeke and other places burnt into Household Cavalry memories were again theatres of British successes. It was now that the Germans, who, to do them justice, could generally produce some novelty, started their crafty "pill-boxes," the little buildings of concrete reinforced

with steel, which formed a chain of defences and gave pause to Allied attack.

From October 10th, for a fortnight, the Life Guards were at Neuf Berquin for their share in the operations; then the Division was moved to an area hard by Doullens, where Cavalry training, in view of the Battle of Cambrai, was pretty strenuous, and whence dismounted parties were despatched to take turns in "the line."

The penultimate year of the war was not to close without another pitched battle. In August, 1917, the British Army—according to Kitchener's precise plan—had reached its highwater mark, but our forces, engaged in a world-war, were flung out far and wide, and early in November Haig's own command, which had been so terribly bled on the Passchendaele Ridge, had been weakened by the despatch of two Divisions to Italy.* The British Commander had to cast about for a spot in the line of German defences which might be least able to withstand a sudden attack; such a sector was thought to present itself on the Cambrai front. In this district the Germans were, it was hoped, lulled into a false sense of security by their belief in the impregnability of the Hindenburg Line. The line at this point was lightly held by divisions brought there for comparative rest after strenuous times in the north. G.H.Q. hoped, by a swift blow in this sector to create a gap in this line through which the Cavalry and Tanks might pass, and the seizure of Cambrai itself seemed to be within just surmise.

Large stocks of new tanks were available and were massed near to the line. The attack was to be under-

* Corporal Major Twedle and Corporal Major Varney, R.H.G.—who had previously been severely wounded—were sent on special service to the Italian Front where Trooper King, First Life Guards, died while serving as orderly to General Cadorna.

taken by the Thirty-sixth, Sixty-second, Fifty-first, Sixth, Twentieth, Twelfth and Twenty-ninth Infantry Divisions and the Fifth Indian Cavalry Division. In reserve were two Infantry Divisions, four Cavalry Divisions, one French Cavalry Division and the independent Canadian Cavalry Brigade. Five more Infantry Divisions, including the Guards, were held as reinforcements.

Two days only were allotted to the surprise element of the attack. The broad idea of the attack was to gain a strong position on the Bourslon Ridge, thence to strike at the junction of the Hindenburg lines at Queant. The troops were then to sweep along the Sensel River and backwards along the Cambrai-Arras Road. Agreeably with this plan the Third Cavalry Division was moved up to Cherignolles, not far from Bray-sur-Somme arriving by night on November 18th-19th. At Corbie the men had seen, many of them for the first time, regiments of French Cavalry; the appearance of men and horses was most imposing, perhaps the more so because—although this was not known to their British comrades—they had just emerged from barracks. All was quiet along the front until the early morning of the 19th when, without warning, every gun roared out; the Third Corps advanced and secured positions at Marcoing and Masnières without much opposition.

It was on the 20th that Kavanagh came into action. The tanks had crossed the canal and the main Hindenburg line had been reached at Mœuvres, while Bourslon Hill Wood was being attended to by the West Riding and Highland Divisions, when the Cavalry were thrust forward, the Secunderabad Brigade at Anneux covering itself with special distinction. The next day was also a "day out" for the Corps Commander. His First and Fifth Divisions were freely used, although the usefulness

of the latter, as of the Canadian Brigade, was seriously impaired by a tank crashing through the only bridge over the canal which would bear the weight of mounted troops ; four Cavalry Brigades had to possess their souls in patience whilst a temporary bridge was constructed which, even when complete, had to be very gingerly used. The Fourth Dragoon Guards took Cantaign at the sword's point, whilst the Bays charged west of the village ; the Ninth Lancers swept along the Canal Valley to Noyelles where French civilians were found ; the Fort Garry Horse charged a battery of guns at Fontaine for which they were mentioned in a special order of the day ; the Second Cavalry Division held the line against a counter-attack. Extraordinary scenes of exultation were witnessed in England on receipt of the first news of Cambrai. Hats were flung in the air, hurrahs echoed through the streets, church bells were rung throughout the country, and congratulations, well deserved, but premature, were showered upon the High Command. The jubilation was short-lived. On November 23rd, the Seventh and Eighth Cavalry Brigades had been moved to the Querrieu area, when the report came of the fierce German counter-attack in the Cambrai sector generally and at Bourslon in particular. The German infantry, stung at being caught unawares, and far from being demoralised, had counter-attacked with great vigour, fresh divisions being rushed up in trains and hurled on to the tired British troops who had been pushed back an uncomfortable distance. Every available man had to be summoned to stem the German tide. Two Cavalry Divisions reached the firing line at the gallop, there to fight dismounted, the Guards made a memorable forced march to Bourslon, and the Third Cavalry Division sped to the trenches in motor 'buses. What had been hailed as a British victory was within an ace of being recorded as a British reverse. The

breakdown of the Cambrai offensive will probably be attributed by the military historian to several causes. It will be remembered among other things that the German infantryman had learnt to trust implicitly in the great lines of defence he himself had dug, and, while nothing like the military dry rot of twelve months later had set in, he was no longer terrorised by the tanks. The vital element of surprise which was to characterise the whole battle was largely destroyed by the breaking down of the Scheldt Canal bridge, which maimed the Cavalry advance, and gave the enemy time to rush up trainloads of fresh shock-troops. A note will also be made of the two German machine-gun battalions which, brought up from reserve by train, so impressed themselves as to give birth to the idea of converting the Household Cavalry and several Yeomanry regiments into a mobile reserve of machine guns. For some days the result of the Battle of Cambrai hung in the balance, but by December 5th a British line had been solidly established and throughout the month the Cavalry were kept in it. On Christmas Eve the horses of the Seventh and Eighth Brigades were moved from Querrieu to a district some twelve miles from Abbeville; the march for troopers with three horses apiece was "trying," as the roads were deep in snow and at some points large snowdrifts had to be negotiated.

For the attack on the Passchendaele Ridge the Third Cavalry Division had been held in mobile reserve, a special duty of the Life Guards at one time being to reinforce, in more senses than one, the Portuguese contingent.

Until the close of the costly operations, which military documents have been careful to champion, the Seventh and Eighth Cavalry Brigades were in constant request and seldom out of touch with the front line.

CHAPTER XII

THE year 1918, which was to bring victory to the Allies, after a disaster, opened quietly, for which the weather was largely responsible. There was some slight activity, however, in the area behind Gough's Fifth Army, where, around Montigny Farm, the Third Cavalry Division had a large dismounted party.

The tour of duty carried out by the Cavalry was made particularly irksome, not by the Hun, but by the intense frost and snow. The idea of holding the front line, by massing as many men as possible therein, had been discarded by both sides. The system generally employed was the establishment of a chain of posts, each of which would include a machine-gun in its armament. The real strength lay in the support trenches where the Battalions awaited, in the comparative security of dug-outs, any call upon their services.

So it was at Montigny Farm. These posts in which our unfortunate Hotchkiss gunners were called upon to exist were distinguished by names, and Dragoon Post, International Post and others, will live long, if unpleasantly, in memory. In these holes in the ground men had not room to move, nor dared they assume any other than a crouching posture. The Hotchkiss gunners who manned them had on several occasions to be carried out bodily on relief and carefully thawed in front of fires in the dug-outs of the support line.

The Household Cavalry had again and again given proof of its versatility. Now a call was made on behalf

of a newly constituted branch of the service. Soon after the New Year Captain Lord Somers, who was quickly promoted to substantive command, Lieutenants Robson, Trafford and Waterhouse were transferred to the Tank Corps.

On February 1st the Division moved to an area around Trefcon, a village behind the Fifth Army front some miles east of Ham.

It was here and now that the message was brought which spoke of an important and impending transformation. The news that the three leading Regiments of mounted men were to be converted by a stroke of the pen into Machine Gunners, was bound to create some concern—if wholly unflavoured by any resentment—among those immediately affected, while at home there was something like consternation, and a good deal of complaining. Elderly gentlemen confabulated in club corners and murmured of a blow dealt to prestige; machine gunners might be required, but why should the lot fall on men in the highest places? The Household Cavalry, it was ruefully remarked, would be the only Cavalry not to ride into Berlin—Berlin, alas, was still some way off. The elementary answer to any suggestion or surmise was very simple, and went to the roots of the constitution of the Household Cavalry who are essentially liable to be employed wherever and however the Sovereign may please and may direct, with the implicit understanding that when the specific duty is accomplished they must be returned to their immediate service, mounted or dismounted, about the Sovereign's Person.

There were of course cogent reasons for asking that the Household Cavalry should give up without reserve much that they held dear. Despite the Commander-in-Chief's championship of the *arme blanche* it had been decided that the supply of mounted men in France was in excess of any

likely, or, anyhow, immediate demand, and must be reduced from five to three Divisions. The Indian Regiments of the Fourth and Fifth Cavalry Divisions were to be translated to the Near East, where they would probably be more serviceable and would certainly be more comfortable. The six white Regiments thus liberated would be absorbed by dismounting three Yeomanry Regiments and three Regular Regiments of the First, Second and Third Cavalry Divisions.

Among the pretexts offered for unhorsing the Household Cavalry one was at least quite genuine. However excellent horsemasters* the difficulty of mounting soldiers, who averaged six foot for service in the field was asserting itself; the question of remounts could not be brushed aside. But perhaps the real reason for the move was the chance of matching special men with a special opportunity. The first-rate value of the machine-gun had proclaimed itself; it had long ceased to be treated as the Cinderella, or even as the ancillary, of the artillery, but if the weapon was faultless, its setting was still faulty, not only because it was too often worked by the men whom Company Commanders could "best spare," but because the machine gunners, although they had been brigaded, were still, so to speak, too local. A Battalion organisation had been decided upon, one Battalion to be attached to each Division of Infantry. This done, it remained to set afoot a mobile reserve (following up to a point the German plan) which could be used in every part of the field; for this reserve men well educated, well disciplined, and who had given proof of adaptability, were needed, and the eyes of the authorities fastened on the Household Cavalry.

On March 4th the Secretary of State convened the

* In South Africa the Composite Regiment proved itself so excellent in horsemastership as, despite their weight and work, to exhaust fewer horses than any other cavalry unit.



A.-G., the G.O.C. London District, and the Commanding Officers of the Service and Reserve Regiments of Household Cavalry and told them it had been decided to dismount the three Regiments of Household Cavalry in France, and utilise them to form three Battalions of Machine Gunners ; he wished to consult with those concerned as to how best this decision could be carried out.

It was decided :—

- (1) That each Regiment of Household Cavalry in France should form one battalion of Machine Gun Guards, but that each Regiment should retain its identity.
 - (2) That the additional men required by each Regiment to bring it up to the establishment of a machine gun battalion would be found first from surplus Household Cavalrymen now with the Reserve Regiments at Home, and any balance from the Regiment of Machine Gun Guards. These men to be trained at the Machine Gun Guards' Training Centre, Pirbright, before being sent out.
 - (3) All future reinforcements required by the Household Battalions of Machine Gunners, and by the Battalion of Machine Gun Guards now with the Guards' Division, to be found from a common source, namely, the Machine Gun Guards Training Centre at PIRBRIGHT.
 - (4) Each Commanding Officer of the Household Regiments to be allowed to exchange certain officers and Other Ranks who are not considered suitable for Machine Gun work, with similar personnel in reserve Regiments at Home.
 - (5) The Commander-in-Chief in France to be consulted as to whether he would prefer to reconstruct the Household Regiments in France, or to send the personnel of these Regiments home for this purpose.
 - (6) To go on with the formation of the Headquarters of the Regiment of Machine Gun Guards, the battalions of which would be :—
1st Battalion*—1st Life Guards Batt. of Machine Gun Gds.
2nd Battalion—2nd Life Guards Batt. of Machine Gun Gds.
3rd Battalion—Royal Horse Guards Batt. of Machine Gun Gds.
4th Battalion—Machine Gun Guards.
5th (Res.) Battalion—Machine Gun Guards.
- Note.*—Reinforcements for Machine Gun Guards would be trained in this 5th (Res.) Battalion.

* The title actually used in the field was No. 1 (First Life Guards) Battalion, Guards Machine Gun Regiment, etc.

196 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

The day before this momentous meeting the C.-in-C. had written to the Corps Commander :—

(Not for Publication or Communication to the Press.)

General Headquarters,
British Armies in France,
3rd March, 1918.

MY DEAR KAVANAGH,*

The situation with regard to man-power has made it necessary to convert to other uses certain units now in the field, and, in consequence, the Army Council, with the consent of His Majesty the King, have issued orders that the three Household Cavalry Regiments are to be dismounted and converted into Army Machine Gun Battalions.

I feel confident that since this reorganization has become necessary, it will be accepted with the loyalty and devotion with which every turn of fortune has been met by British officers and men throughout the War, and that the Household Cavalry Regiments will in their new rôle as Machine Gun Battalions maintain their old *esprit de corps* and add further honours to their very distinguished record.

On the eve of this change, I wish to express to all belonging to these Regiments my admiration of the fine services they have rendered since the beginning of the War.

Yours very truly,
D. HAIG.

The Regiments had, of course, no right nor reason to record any sort of protest against what may have seemed a violent dislocation of their professional lives. All their discipline and training went to convince them that what was ordered was right, and their precise attitude was reflected in a letter from their old friend and first leader in the field, who wrote to Lord Grenfell :—

H.Q. Cavalry Corps,
B.E.F.,
March 17th, 1918.

DEAR LORD GRENFELL,†

Your Regiment, the First Life Guards, are, as you know, in the course of being dismounted and turned into Machine Gunners, a very great blow to them all, and caused by no fault of their own, but simply

March 12th, 1918.

MY DEAR TWEEDMOUTH,

I am forwarding to you one of three copies of a letter I have just received from the Commander-in-Chief.

I have written back to him saying that he may feel perfectly con-

TRIBUTES TO HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY 197

because of their extra weight, and consequent extra expense to keep up as Cavalry in this Country.

I think you would like to know, that in spite of this great disappointment, the whole of the Regiment is starting on its new *rôle* with the most magnificent determination to do its best, and has called forth the admiration of all.

A member of my staff arrived here to-day from the back area where the Household Cavalry have gone, and said to me, "I shall always after this take my hat off to the Household Cavalry whenever I meet them, for though this great blow has fallen upon them, they are as cheerful as possible, and seem to have no thought now but as to how they can best make themselves efficient to take their share in the War as Machine Gunners."

I noticed the same spirit and the same determination in them when I said "Goodbye" to them all before they left the Cavalry Corps, and I think you will agree with me that it is very fine.*

fidest, that, sorry as the Household Cavalry will be to be Dismounted, they will loyally do their best in their new *rôle*, as they have always done, whatever has been asked of them, however unpleasant, throughout their history, and will devote all their energy and devotion into making the new Household Machine Gun Battalions into a *corps d'élite* and a model of efficiency, which with the material they have got they are sure to become.

Yours sincerely,

C. M. KAVANAGH.

23rd March, 1918.

*
I am greatly obliged for your letter of the 17th inst., though the decision to dismount the BLUES is to me very painful, yet what you are kind enough to write of the soldierlike spirit of the Regiment is one of the most satisfactory indications of our greatly improved Army which I could have hoped to live to know.

After the battle near YPRES, at the end of October, 1914, I ceased to hope that the BLUES would get the chance they utilized at Waterloo, for in siege warfare the cavalry as such have few opportunities. On the other hand, I have never thought of their grand fighting qualities being so finely shewn in the trenches. You can picture my pleasant thoughts when I contrast the spirit of the BLUES turning to the duties of Machine Gunners and the false swagger of the men with whom I served in 1885 in a Light Dragoon Regiment. The senior duty officer, who had joined for the war from another regiment, invariably gave the words when marching us from Dorchester barracks to Church—"Walk;" "March."

I am sending a copy of your letter to the Regiment who know and appreciate you, while I am, alas, only a link with the past.

[EVELYN WOOD TO KAVANAGH.]

The three Regiments on March 10th retired to Abbeville,* and were in process of being dismounted and despatching a large draft of horses to the Egyptian Expeditionary Force when came the desperate German assault. The break through occurred in front of where the Cavalry in plenary strength had been stationed, and it has been thought that the combined English and Indian troops, if they had been in position, might have been potent to stem the onrush. At least something like the converse can be alleged in that when the enemy's footmen had marched themselves to a standstill their advance was checked by their lack of mounted men ; nor will it ever be erased from the credit of the British Cavalry that at midnight on March 25th, when our line had been pierced and outflanked, the squadrons bore down on the ridges west and north-west of Noyon and would not have drawn rein had not General Humbert—who had meanwhile been able to amend his line—cried enough.

From Abbeville the Household Cavalry were to give proof of their pedestrian powers. On the night of March 26th there arrived lorry-loads of infantry equipment and early the next morning, without fanfare of trumpets, colonels, captains and troopers paraded with packs upon their backs and marched solidly for three days to join the Tenth Corps around St. Pol. Each night the medical officers were busy patching up feet that had been trained only to the stirrup ; each morning the regiments plodded on till they eventually marched past the G.O.C. Tenth Corps with every man doing his best to bear himself as a veteran " foot-slogger."

On April 4th Life Guards and Blues entrained for

* Owing to recent comparative immunity from casualties the First Life Guards had earned the title of God's Own ; on the night of their departure the ground which they left to the Seventh Dragoon Guards was heavily bombed by hostile aircraft.

Etaples, outside which town they were to be encamped for six weeks for their conversion into battalions of machine gunners. The officers and N.C.O.'s repaired to the School of Machine Gunnery at Camiers hard by; the troopers were handed over to a specially selected staff of the M.G.C., most of whom had come from the School of Machine Gunnery at Grantham. The training was intensive, and in six weeks the new battalions had even mastered some of the Vickers gun intricacies which were not always in the range of the M.G.C. at large. The principles of indirect overhead fire were concentrated on and a system of barrage fire, hitherto attaching to artillery alone, was developed; the battalions, indeed, were to be regarded rather as light artillery than as specialised Infantry.* The Household Cavalry, organised into Battalions of a Headquarters and four companies, were designated as the No. 1 (First Life Guards), No. 2 (Second Life Guards) and No. 3 (Royal Horse Guards (Blues)) Battalions of the Guards Machine Gun Regiment. There were also a Fourth Battalion of Machine Guns, which served the Guards Division and a Fifth Reserve Battalion (in England). The strength of a battalion was fixed at 747 officers, 787 other ranks, and 64 Vickers guns.

Expert testimony on behalf of the Household Cavalry Regiments was given by the officer—Captain Howard—charged with instruction of the First Life Guards as machine gunners. At the end of the course he said to the men: "I have always stood in awe of the Life

* Besides their highly technical training, the horseless cavalry took great pains to perfect themselves in infantry drill, and even some parade movements. The words of command were at first a little mystifying, and after the departure of the Foot Guards' instructors, "Troops, right about wheel" would sometimes out, but the recognition of honest effort was to be found in Life Guards being called upon during the Armistice to provide a permanent guard for the Headquarters of the Corps to which they belonged.

Guards from the moment when, as a small child, I was taken to Whitehall to see the King's Life Guard. Judge of my terror, therefore, when I was warned for this present duty. I was warned, also, that the Life Guards were in a very ugly frame of mind. I thought of them mourning over their horses as a lioness might mourn over her lost cubs, and trembled for my own safety. Whatever your feelings, and I know they were very sore, you have kept them carefully hidden, and thrown yourselves into your new work with such enthusiasm that I, an officer of the Machine Gun Corps, tell you with all sincerity that you are the finest machine gunners, not only in the British Army, but on the battle front."

The new Battalions were brought up to full Machine Gun strength by (a) the disbandment of the Seventh Machine Gun Squadron, (b) details of the Household Battalion from Rouen, (c) ready-trained drafts from England.

So far the Household Cavalry had provided, besides a good many details, a composite Regiment, a Cavalry Brigade, a Divisional Squadron, two Cyclists Companies, three Reserve Regiments, a group of non-commissioned officers for special service in Africa,* and three Machine

* In the early part of 1918 six N.C.O.'s (Corporal M. V. Davies, Lance-Corporal A. E. Oates, Lance-Corporal Hazelwood, Lance-Corporal Heard, Lance-Corporal Smith, and Lance-Corporal W. Eaton), volunteered and were accepted for service with the West African Service Brigade, who were then taking part in the operations in German East Africa. The party sailed from Southampton on January 18th, 1918, for Dar-es-Salaam, British East Africa. On arrival, however, the West African Service Brigade had already left East Africa for the west coast: the party of N.C.O.'s therefore followed, proceeding *via* Cape Town, South Africa, Sierra Leone and finally to Lagos, where they were detailed to the various Battalions to act as instructors to the native troops.

After a period of training in Nigeria, the Brigade was due for service in Palestine, but was delayed by a serious outbreak of influenza, and



Gun Battalions. Another contribution was to be made, for in April Major Astor took a Siege Battery—composed of men drawn from the Household Cavalry Regiments—and after an experience of the German bombardment of Merville, was at midsummer in the line in the Loos district, equipped with 6-inch tractor-drawn guns. His command was termed the 520th (Household) Siege Battery, which in the August advance from Arras was for practical purposes divided into two sections, one on either side of the Cambrai road. Each night one section moved forward, and with the difficulty of taking up and laying down the platforms, a summer's night was all too short for the task; the noise of the tractors approaching new positions was liable to attract notice, and the camouflage had to be complete by dawn. On September 1st the forward section was in action at Vis-en-Artois, 1,200 yards from the front line, slightly in advance of the field guns, and 4.5-inch howitzers: that night, Astor was wounded in fourteen places, with the loss of his leg, and Captain Lee Warner, Royal Artillery, took over the command of the battery which pursued its course up to Le Cateau. The worth and work of the battery can be summed up by a paragraph in a lecture at Staff College, to the effect that "The Battery Astor ran at the end of the War was one of the most efficient in the British Army."

At Etaples by mid-May the machine gun organisation was complete, when on May 19th occurred the hideous air raid which brought violent death to many of the hitherto fortunate First Life Guards and sorely depleted the ranks of the new and highly-trained formation.

before the troops were pronounced physically fit the Armistice was declared and the expedition was cancelled.

A few months later the N.C.O.'s were returned to England with the exception of Lance-Corporal Oates, who remained in the country two or three years longer. Lance-Corporal Heard died in Liverpool after being invalided home with diabetes.

The night of May 19th-20th (Whitsun night) was clear moonlight and a happy gathering was taking place, as only the day before a draft of 128 men had arrived from Cherbourg. Suddenly, at about 10 p.m., enemy aircraft began to bomb the town, and several of the hospitals lying in the Etaples-Camiers Road were hit, the whole countryside being illuminated by the flames.

Some of the hospitals on the Etaples-Camiers Road were hit, and a party of the Blues, whose camp was close by went to the rescue and themselves suffered casualties in Lieutenant Herbert and 12 troopers wounded and one trooper killed. The Second Life Guards withdrew from their camp, which was alongside the railway lines, and no great anxiety was felt in the camp of the First Life Guards until 11 p.m. an aeroplane was heard directly overhead. There was a moment's dead silence as the machine swooped down with engine switched off ; then came a wicked, rushing sound, two flashing explosions, and the tents of " D " and " A " Companies seemed to vanish into space. The wreckage was indescribable and the casualties numbered 42 killed, 1 died of wounds, and 82 wounded. The whole of the horse transport drivers were called in as gunners, their places being taken by any handy man in Etaples until a draft could arrive from England.

In two and a half centuries the Household Troops had fought in many places, and not always against a civilised opponent. Now, in European warfare, some of the bravest men were to be butchered in cold blood without a chance of lifting a finger even in self-defence. Well may the gorge of surviving comrades and friends have risen, and well may a resolve have been registered that no effort must be slackened until a cruel, crafty foeman had been forced to bite the dust.

A few days after this mournful, miserable event, the

three battalions moved up towards the line, but, for the moment, were not to act together.

On May 22nd the Blues went by train to Labrignoy, whence they marched to Bois-les-Dames on the First Army front ; on the 23rd the Second Life Guards joined the Fourth Corps at Larton, journeying *viâ* Doullens, and on the day following the First Life Guards entrained for Haute Avesnes, behind Arras, where they, too, came under the First Army.*

Business was at once to hand for all three Battalions ; Companies of the First Life Guards were set to conduct programmes of overhead harassing fire at Fenchy and elsewhere, while the Second Life Guards took over the duties of " A " Battalion M.G.C., in the Warloy-Bayieu system, and the Blues were given a special programme at Mazingarbe on the Bethune front. Horses were now finally to disappear even from the transport, and guns and men were henceforth to be conveyed by motor. The establishment was : Battalion Headquarters—two Sun-beam cars, one Crossley box car (15 cwt.), two 3-ton lorries, four Combination side-cars, eighteen motor cycles. To each Company was allotted : one Ford car, one

* "The organisation of the M.G.C. into Battalions has proved even more successful than was anticipated. The discipline, training, standard of interior economy, the general fighting efficiency of M.G. units has increased enormously since the re-organisation, and the work of the Corps during the recent fighting has been of the highest order.

"The organisation is still young, and requires every help from Commanders of all arms to enable it to develop its full efficiency in the shortest possible time.

"It is certain that assistance given will be amply repaid in future operations, and the Army Commander feels confident that Corps Commanders will give their personal attention to the system of training, employment, and interior economy of Divisional Machine Gun Battalions, so as to get the full value from a fighting organisation which has already proved its worth." [*Contemporary notes from First Army correspondence.*]

204 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

Crossley box car, five 3-ton lorries and four side-cars.* This equipment gave unmitigated satisfaction, and the men were quickly convinced that a motor lorry represented the easiest and least fatiguing way of reaching the scene of action.

All ranks had by now settled down to their new work, but had not forgotten that while Household Cavalry may be set to play any part, they may not be divorced from their special circumstances, and it was with indignation they heard that the three Reserve Regiments were bearing titles from which the word "Reserve" had been erased.

Colonel Edgar Brassey, as representing the three Regiments in the field, seized his pen and wrote—to receive quick redress—to the Silver Stick.

In the Field,
21st June, 1918.

Information has been received that the Army Council have issued instructions that the word "Reserve" is to cease to appear in the description of the Reserve Regiment First Life Guards, at Hyde Park Barracks, and presumably of the other Household Cavalry Reserve Regiments.

I wish to protest most strongly against this. It was laid down at the conference at the War Office between the Commanding Officers of the three Household Cavalry Regiments and the Secretary of State for War, on March 4th, 1918, that each Regiment of Household Cavalry forming a Battalion of Machine Gun Guards should retain its identity. It is difficult to see how the Regiment of First Life Guards can be serving at the Front and also at Hyde Park Barracks, and I submit that the Regiment is in France, and therefore that the details at Hyde Park Barracks should not be designated the First Life Guards, but either the depot or Reserve Regiment, or any other name which may meet the case.

The question of the identity of the Household Cavalry Regiments was one of the points most strongly insisted on at the conference, and was willingly conceded by the Secretary of State. If this is foregone, it will not be long before it will become the popular idea that the Household Cavalry Regiments are not serving in France, and nothing

* Later in the year the establishment was increased by twenty extra three-ton lorries per battalion.

could be more prejudicial to the reputation and *esprit de corps* of these Regiments, than that this should occur.

I have the honour to request that steps may be taken immediately to represent this to the authorities, or if necessary that the Gold Stick-in-Waiting may be asked to ascertain the wishes of H.M. the King on the subject.

CHAPTER XIII

ALL the while there were anxious times on the Western Front, and the British G.H.Q. fully expected an attack to be renewed on their lines. Marshal Foch seems personally to have inclined to the view that the enemy's April failure in Flanders had crippled him considerably, and that he had not sufficient reserves for a grand assault on the north. His own mind in early May was fixed on a French advance on the Montdidier front ; the enemy, he thought, might attack and fail or might delay his next attack sufficiently to enable him to forestall him ; but, when, on May 26th the Germans penetrated 15 kilometres into the French position, the Generalissimo had to defend for a moment before he could attack. His confidence, however, in ultimate success, was never shaken by a hair's breadth, and the story ran that at a meeting at this time of the Supreme War Council at Versailles, he drew a little diagram to show the waves of the attack and murmured : " Pas mal—les vagues diminuent."

The Central Powers, baffled in France and thwarted in Italy, were in July to make one more attempt to " win the War," and on the 15th Ludendorff propelled his force forward on a front of 50 miles, with Rheims as the mid-point of attack, and two days later reached the acme of advance into French territory in 1918. He found his opponent ready—and more than ready—for him. Foch, who had coolly waited for three months, and had refused to be either flustered or depressed, now launched the great counter-offensive which, while the politicians were prattling, he had been silently preparing. The General-

issimo kept his plan—which frustrated the attack in Champagne and forbade an attack in Flanders—a profound secret ; he also exercised his right—despite certain ill-timed political protests—to dispose of all the Allied forces as seemed best for his supreme purpose. Early on the morning of the 18th the French and American troops struck at, and into, the right flank of the German Army which had crossed the Marne, and within a few days the Allies were making a continuous forward movement, contrasting sharply with the swift rushes, devoid of the necessary “punch” behind them, which had marked the recent assaults of the enemy.* Before August was many days old, the German Headquarters Staff had obviously realised that for the future they must forego any notion of forward marches, for they ordered spontaneously retirements to defensive positions near Montdidier and also on the Ancre in front of the British. Although Haig had come under the orders of the French Generalissimo, he was allowed a perfectly free hand as regards the manœuvring of his force, and it was an open secret that one of his final plans of campaign was preferred by the great French soldier to one he had himself proposed.

The Arras front was believed to be in the German mind for their summer push, and arrangements were made not only to check an advance, but to punish severely those engaged in it. As soon as the hostile attack was delivered, a sector of the Arras front was to be abandoned. Positions were being prepared in two parallel lines running at right angles to the front, one on either side of the Arras-St. Pol line. These were to be strongly held, and the enemy, it was hoped, rushing headlong through the gap caused by the supposed British “break” would thus be caught in

* A week earlier Foch exhorted his Army Commanders : “ L’édifice commence à craquer ; tout le monde à la bataille.”

a lane whose "hedges" bristled with arms of all sorts. Brassey, posted at Haute Avesnes, was cast for a "speaking part" in this scheme, and his officers and non-commissioned officers were closely informed and carefully instructed as to its details and also as to the actual "lie" of the various systems of switch-lines they might be required to occupy. There was thus some tension when in early August the King paid one of his many visits to his troops, and on the 7th and 8th came to the Blues and the First Life Guards. There was no sort of official ceremony or inspection, the Regiments simply lining the road in walking-out order. The King had often seen, and would often see again, his Household Brigade in all their panoply. He could scarcely, however, receive a more heart-to-heart greeting than from the gathering of khaki-clad, war-worn men in a dusty road in France. Perhaps no soldiers knew quite as they did the part which their august Colonel-in-Chief had played in the War. He had laboured for peace and sued for it, but when his message of peace was flung back, careless of himself and careful for everyone and everything else, he had striven day in day out to build up the great military structure which had now risen to its pre-eminence, and to pour into the field his millions of trained soldiers in whose hands in sooth lay the destinies of the world.

The Second Life Guards were too far engaged on the Albert front to salute their Sovereign. They had been holding a series of positions to the North of Bray-sur-Somme, gravely engaged in long-distance shoots and trying to sweep a path for the advance of the Australians on July 22nd. Through August there was scarcely a day—or an hour—when they were not speaking with the enemy, and among their many losses they were to count at Sailly-le-Sec an officer who had been—so to speak—born in the Regiment.

Young Ferguson was in command of a section of four guns, two of which were in advance of the trench where he himself and his two remaining guns were posted. It was his habit, towards evening, to stroll out across the open country till he reached a trench leading to his advanced guns. Then having made certain that all was as it should be, he would return. It was on the evening of the 21st that his death occurred. He had completed his inspection of the positions, and had almost reached his rear trench, where his section sergeant, Corporal-of-Horse Macintosh, awaited his return. As he was in the very act of jumping down into the trench his Corporal-of-Horse heard the roar of an approaching shell. He shouted a warning and flung himself down, but before Ferguson could follow his example, the shell burst at close range, and he fell into the trench dead. He was laid to rest the next day with full honours, and the Regimental Band being with the Regiment at the time, he was the only Life Guardsman on Active Service to receive such a burial.

Just now, the enemy having failed to attack on the Arras front as expected, a British advance from the same part of the line was set afoot, and in the shuffling of troops, necessitated by the coming operations, Brassey was asked to take over ground occupied by the 170th Infantry Brigade, and hold it for a day and a half until the arrival of the Eighth Canadian Brigade. The proposal, which rather suggested a stage army procession, was accepted without demur, and the relief was smoothly and successfully carried out with the loss of one Trooper wounded.

On August 25th the First Life Guards were immediately concerned in an attack by the Fifty-first (Highland) Division and the Second and Third Canadian Divisions on the positions between the Scarpe River and the Cambrai-Arras Road. There was a hope, and not much

more, that the attack might succeed to the point of taking Monchy, that highly debatable point with which the Household Cavalry were already familiar. Brassey was asked to supply a protective creeping barrage for the advancing infantry. This duty lay a little outside the scope of the ordinary machine gunner, but their special training enabled the Life Guards to fire with a very narrow clearance above the heads of the infantry, rendering the protection of the barrage the more efficacious. Whilst two companies were to be thus occupied, the remaining two were to be employed, one in bringing flanking fire to bear on Orange Hill, the other in putting down a neutralising band of fire in support of the Canadian attack. The programme was carried out in its entirety and to the entire satisfaction of those whom it was intended to benefit, some expert surprise being evinced at the results obtained from the Vickers gun. The attack * was, in the main, successful beyond expectation, and with Monchy completely and finally liberated, General Currie, in a special order of the day, could exhort all in his command to "bear in mind Stonewall Jackson's motto, 'Press forward.'"

While the Household Brigade were trying to hold high their standards in the field, a strange—and strangely inopportune—attempt was made at home to cut across their continuity. The first symptom was discernible at the Pay Office, whence the petty proposal came that if N.C.O. or man were promoted from the rank he held prior to the constitution of the Machine Gun Battalion,

* On the morning of the attack an operation which smacked somewhat of the farcical was carried out by a party known as the Naval Brigade. There was in the Scarpe an island reputed to be a strong point. Two sections of the Sea Force and two sections of the Life Guards, under Lieutenant C. H. Brassey, set sail on rafts, stormed the islet, and bore back in triumph the entire garrison, which consisted of one rather anæmic and desperately hungry German youth.

he should receive only the pay of his new rank as ruled for Brigade of Guards. The matter of daily pence might have been passed over, but there was lodged at Caterham a complaint that men who had enlisted for service with the Household Cavalry were ordered to wear the badge, large in size but ugly in design, which had been prescribed for the Machine Gun Guards before there had been any question of the Household Cavalry being for the time blended with them. The last straw was when, on September 11th, the three Battalions in France were curtly told that the nomenclature of the Foot Guards was to be adopted universally for all W.O.'s, N.C.O.'s and men : drafts received at the base from Pirbright were to be considered generally as reinforcements for any of the four Battalions, and men belonging to one or other of the Household Cavalry Regiments were being sent, not only to Battalions of Household Cavalry other than their own, but to the Fourth Battalion doing duty with the Guards Division. In no breast did *esprit de corps* burn brighter than in that of the Commander-in-Chief, who amid all the cares which beset—but never oppressed—him, was at pains to write to Lord Milner on October 15th * :—

“ It was understood by the O.C.'s the Household Cavalry Regiments, that their respective Battalions of the Guards Machine Gun Regiment would be permitted to retain their individuality and distinctive nomenclature to a greater degree than is now the case.”

After enumerating the various grounds for complaint, the Field-Marshal continued :—

“ I beg to state that I consider the status and records of the Regiments of Household Cavalry are such as to be deserving of special treatment :

* Lord Milner had succeeded Lord Derby at the War Office in the spring.

“ The three Regiments of Household Cavalry, constituting, as they do now, three motorised Army Troops M.G. Battalions, are in no way connected with the Guards Division.

“ I therefore suggest the following as a solution :—

“ (1) That each of the three Battalions of the G.M.G.R. formed from the dismounted Household Cavalry retain the cap-badges, numerals, nomenclature and rates of pay of the Household Cavalry.

“ (2) That, in order to denote that they are now employed as machine gunners, all ranks wear the collar-badges authorised for the G.M.G.R.

“ (3) All regular members of Household Cavalry Regiments serving with the G.M.G.R. shall be posted to their own Battalions.”

CHAPTER XIV

UP to the end of August the three Battalions were working independently of one another, attached to different Corps and gaining valuable practical experience to supplement their specialised knowledge of the gun. But their actual constitution had been rather as part of a mobile reserve for the entire Expeditionary Force, and a move was now made to organise a column for this purpose. The general idea was that while one Battalion was left free to act as an independent unit, the other two should be brigaded and stiffened by other mobile troops so as to form a column strong enough to negotiate effectively in any sector of the front where it might be directed : the authorities may well have remembered how, in 1917, two Battalions of German machine-guns had held up the British advance on Cambrai. The First Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards, with a Battalion of the Army Cyclists Corps, were welded into a unit to be known as Lindsay's Force, from the name of its Commander, Colonel G. M. Lindsay, D.S.O.,* and on September 4th this force was afoot. The Canadian Corps had been detailed to attack to the south-east of Arras, and Lindsay was told to dash forward—in touch with the First Cavalry Brigade—and seize the crossings of the Canal de l'Escat. It was a new experience for Household Cavalrymen to sit in comparative ease and watch the long lines of Cavalry moving up to the attack, the attack itself being so successful that the Cavalry had secured and

* It was later known as Brassey's Brigade, on Lieut.-Colonel Brassey taking over command ; its later title was the Household Machine Gun Brigade.

passed beyond the objectives before Lindsay's long column of lorries could come near enough to the scene of action for the gunners to de-'bus. After playing his part in the Cavalry Corps movement in mid-September, which was directed by the Commander-in-Chief himself, Lindsay billeted, on Michaelmas Day, in and around Bray in readiness to support the troops who were to give the *coup de grâce* to the Hindenburg line and hurl the enemy back to St. Quentin.

At Bray the Brigade was supplemented by the Fourth Guards Brigade, composed of battalions supernumerary to the Guards Division by reason of the reduction of Infantry Brigades from four to three battalions. These battalions were made mobile by a supply of motor lorries to convey all ranks, and were strengthened by four 18-pounder field guns, which could be run out on a wooden rail. The column on the road looked formidable, but was hampered for action by its immense length. The stretch of roadway required for three infantry battalions, a field battery and two Machine Gun battalions in lorries is more than considerable, and to get the force into action, the leading lorry had to halt at some distance from the point of contact. The rear parties were therefore so far behind their leaders that "mobility" was a very questionable term, especially as the rear had always to be taken by one of the Machine Gun battalions burdened with the impedimenta incidental to their profession.

With the month of October there could be little mistake made as to how—and how soon—the weary warfare would be accomplished; the fight had been fierce, the tale of agony drawn out, but the end was almost in view. Throughout September and October the Second Life Guards, attached successively to the Forty-seventh and Forty-sixth Divisions, were almost continually in action,

and had an almost daily tale of casualties.* On Michaelmas Day the Forty-sixth Division, profiting inestimably from the barrage which Stanley put down, and which was now reckoned as a Household Cavalry speciality, strode across the Hindenburg line, pressed on for four miles further, and took 3,300 prisoners. There then came the advance from Sequehaut, which lasted intermittently for a fortnight and included the capture of the Hindenburg Canal, and during which, on October 8th, Lieutenant Gunter's subsection took prisoner 30 officers and 120 other ranks, besides securing 12 enemy machine guns. Meanwhile, the First Life Guards and the Blues, with their attendant Infantry Brigade, were marching with the troops whose goal was St. Quentin, and were detailed to make good at any moment any gap in the line, or to speak quickly should the enemy make any attempt to stand fast. The sense of impending victory and contingent rest stirred the blood in everyone's veins, and there was daily pleasing evidence, which provoked no jealousy, that the Cavalry were busy.† ·Horses and men of the mounted arm were seen returning wounded but exultant, the teams of the heavier types of guns lolled about alongside their silent pieces, remarking between contented puffs of their pipes that Jerry had retired beyond their range, and that

* One of our section's officers manœuvred his gun so as to prevent a German machine-gun nest firing, and we took five guns and 150 prisoners. An English battalion had suffered badly in trying to get it. [Extract from the then Lord Carlton Diary.] This incident provoked a remark, in a home letter, from an infantryman: "The — gets wiped out and these blokes from London wot wears tin tummies comes and does it."

† One thing seemed very striking just now, the entirely different spirit prevailing in the troops. Peace talk was not encouraged; when peace came a few days later, it was certainly joyful news, but a great many of us would have liked to have seen a little more of the complete defeat of the Huns instead of leaving them any of the talking to do. [Letter from an N.C.O., R.H.G., just after Armistice.]

the field and horse were the only gunners in action. On October 7th the Brigade left Bray for the last time, now to be associated with the First and Third Cavalry Divisions in any success which might occur in the direction of Le Cateau. They passed through Vermand, crossed the ruined Hindenburg line, lodged for a night at Bellenglise, where an air raid damaged badly the Coldstream and H.A.C., and two days later were at Clary, by which time both St. Quentin and Le Cateau had been freed from German clutches.

The civilian populations of the first villages * to be taken were evacuated, but with the continuance of the advance the civilians were allowed to remain, and as the lorries of the Brigade passed through the liberated places the village folk swarmed out of their houses to greet their khaki-clad deliverers. From church spires, the windows of *mairies*, and from many a housetop there waved once more the tricolor, hidden away for four years, but carefully kept for the day when the invader should be swept back; from many windows flew towels, tablecloths, or any white rag available, so as to stay any fire from advancing troops. The civilians were, for the most part, entirely destitute. Everything had been commandeered by the enemy, whose cunning no doubt suggested that the Allies would have much ado to feed non-combatant mouths, and many a British soldier went on his way hungry, but happy in the knowledge that a portion of his ration had gone to stay the little stomachs of French children.

The column turned about on October 11th and came at night to Le Catelet, where the two Household Cavalry Battalions remained for five days, moving then *via* Combles to Guilleumont.

* The girls in the villages we have passed had been outraged by the Bosche. [Diary of an officer.]

On October 26th * a transfer was effected between the Second Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards, the former attaching itself to the Household Machine Gun Brigade at Guillemont, while the latter relieved their comrades at Bohain, Vaux Audigny and Wassigny, and were attached to the Ninth Corps. For the last fortnight of the war pride of place in the Household Brigade must perhaps be given to the Blues. The barrage which, on October 29th, they brought to bear on the Bois de L'Abbaye admittedly facilitated its seizure by the First Battalion Northants Regiment ; scarcely less successful, if less showy, barrages were their daily handiwork during the next week. On November 3rd and 4th the First and Thirty-second Divisions stepped over the Canal de Sambre between the Oisy-Landrecies Road and La Louirière, and the last war contribution of the Blues provoked a letter from the G.O.C. First Division to their Colonel :

" The Companies employed with the First Division in the recent operations are reported to me as having carried out their part with much zeal and determination. They were self-reliant and full of determination. The Company (" B ") who were engaged for a week with the First Brigade are specially deserving of praise.

" I consider they are most deserving of award, and I would be glad if you would send me the name of the Officer commanding that Company, and recommendations for other ranks of that and other companies engaged.

" They were all subjected to considerable shell and machine-gun fire, and their behaviour was everything you could wish from the regiment you command."

On November 9th the First and Second Life Guards left their rather dreary camp at Guillemont and moved

* The day before Foch had first discussed with his three Army Commanders the terms of armistice he would offer.

north-east to share in a general assault east of Lille, which city was already in our hands. The march was the more exhilarating as the men, having been dumped in the Somme district, had no idea of the actual progress that had been made. It was with equal surprise and delight that they passed through such places as Cambrai, Douai and Valenciennes, names familiar on the map and in conversation, but which they had scarcely thought to enter, anyhow so soon, as victors. The attack, as an attack, melted, for even the Cavalry had to bustle up to keep anything like touch with the swiftly retiring rearguard, and had little or no opportunity of engaging any substantial portion of the enemy. His retirement was stage-managed with the clockwork precision which so largely characterised German workings; everything of value, without any nice sense of *meum* and *tuum*, was carted away, and the retiring troops were ordered on a timetable which would even enable them to tell their French hosts—who were infinitely glad of their departure—the hour at which the advent of the British troops might be expected. The First Life Guards halted at Ostricourt, some seven kilometres from Lille itself, with the Second Life Guards at Libercourt and were thus disposed on the day there came the whisper—quickly to swell into an official report—that the terms of an armistice had been agreed and signed.

On November 10th Marshal Foch received in his railway train the emissaries of the newly-formed German Government, entertained them courteously, and dictated the terms on which he would grant an armistice. Windy laments and wordy protests were raised, and an otiose discussion was prolonged through the night; the great soldier—as all soldiers—knew there could be but one reply. At five o'clock on the morning of the 11th, the precious documents were signed, and six hours later

across the huge battlefield, the cease-fire sounded, and an exhausted world could rest on its arms.

Consummatum est. The most fearful scourge that had ever been laid upon mankind would lash mankind no more.

Germany—so ran the felicitous message of the British Sovereign to his Army—who planned the war to gain the supremacy of the world, full of pride in her armed strength and of contempt for the small British Army of that day, has been forced to acknowledge her defeat. Soldiers of the British Empire, with your Allied comrades, you have won the war.

Truly the war had been won, but the full price of victory was not yet paid. A great tragedy with all its noble scenes had been enacted, but a dreary drawn-out epilogue must follow.

In the long months, stretching into years, which succeeded the sullen surrender of the German delegates to the French Generalissimo, there was over the face of the earth distress of nations with perplexity. The Angel of Peace might be hovering overhead, but the healing wings were not yet to touch a jaded, but still restless, humanity.

Belgium was still shuddering under the outrages of the invader; Foch must demand and re-demand that never again shall his fair country lie open to insult and slaughter; Germany, sunk in moral corruption, sought to recover in finance what she had lost in the field, and saw her War Lord pass from ignoble flight into ignominious exile; Austria in her pitiful poverty was crying to the friends she had betrayed to come and feed her starvelings; Russia, from end to end, was stretched on a rack of unspeakable horror, and Europe, who had sought to Europeanise the Balkans, came near to be Balkanised herself; the proud Dominions must count their unreturning brave, and Canada seemed to see her crucified soldier

silhouetted against the Flemish sky ; the prisoners were coming heavily across the frontiers, and the politicians were prating of promised lands which were to melt into mirage before they could be neared ; in the old homes the empty places seemed a little emptier and the silent rooms more silent, and suffering, sickness and death—God's black policemen—were still stalking among the men whose bodies were worn by the war their souls had won.

And all the while from Switzerland to the sea and in the dark heart of German soil, and under the blue which canopies Gallipoli, and beyond, and beneath, the greater waters which bathe the British coast, British comrades of the war slept their sleep of peace—calm and inviolate—from which only the call of the Great Captain may stir them.

ROLL OF HONOUR

FIRST LIFE GUARDS.

Nominal Roll of Officers who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

Major Lord John Cavendish, D.S.O.
Captain Lord Hugh Grosvenor.
Captain and Adjutant Sir R. V. Sutton, Bart., M.C.*
Lieutenant A. L. E. Smith, M.C.
Lieutenant A. H. B. St. George.
Lieutenant Hon. G. Ward.
Lieutenant F. W. Collins.
Lieutenant G. T. Trafford.

At Home.

Lieutenant-Colonel E. B. Cook, M.V.O.
Captain the Hon. C. C. Fellowes.
Lieutenant R. Emmett.

OFFICERS ATTACHED.—1ST LIFE GUARDS.

Abroad.

Captain E. D. F. Kelly.
Lieutenant Hon. W. R. Wyndham.
Lieutenant J. C. Close-Brooks.
Lieutenant Sir R. Levinge.
Lieutenant H. Hulton Harrup.

OFFICERS ATTACHED OTHER UNITS.

Lieutenant O. S. Portal, Household Battalion.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant W. H. Wanklin.

FARRIER-STAFF-CORPORAL.

At Home.

2025 Farrier-Staff-Corporal Lambert, R. H.

* Twice wounded. Died at Boulogne of influenza a few days after the Armistice.

222 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

Abroad.

CORPORALS-OF-HORSE.

1972	Corporal-of-Horse	Bruce, P.
2326	"	Coates, J.
2350	"	Dawes, H. W.
2061	"	Holmes, C. L.
2880	"	Leggett, W. T.
2427	"	McFeeley, G.
3088	"	Storey, E. H.
2565	"	Wise, J. W.

CORPORALS.

2693	Corporal	Adams, C.	2549	Corporal	Neighbour, T. G.
2832	"	Beal, A.	2705	"	Pate, T.
2802	"	Castle, E. P.	2569	"	Rose, A.
2916	"	Gibson, A. J.	2889	"	Rowe, D. E.
2719	"	Moore, F. W.			

LANCE-CORPORAL.

3281 Lance-Corporal Kinnimouth, J.

TROOPERS.

3054	Trooper	Abrahams, M. G.	3111	Trooper	Hannan, T. S.
2714	"	Arnold, A. J.	3388	"	Hills, G.
2770	"	Black, J.	3377	"	Hunter, J.
2429	"	Bishop, W. A.	4025	"	Honey, J. H.
2780	"	Berry, J.	4224	"	Hammond, N. W.
2966	"	Blackmore, A. J.	2489	"	Johnston, J.
3461	"	Brown, J. L.	2809	"	Kimpton, E. C. G.
3128	"	Butler, F. J.	2965	"	Lewry, E.
3360	"	Bosworth, H.	2411	"	Levy, W. G.
2244	"	Burton, V.	2827	"	Lord, H.
2273	"	Breakspear, H.	3596	"	Lowe, C. H.
2947	"	Clay, W. H.	3103	"	Moores, J. A.
2920	"	Dennes, V.	3108	"	Mawer, A.
3593	"	Downey, A.	3622	"	Marks, R. W.
3516	"	Day, J. H.	3320	"	McKillop, A.
3412	"	Evans, T. L.	3545	"	McArthur, G.
2828	"	Ford, A. J.	3359	"	Newbrook, J.
2666	"	Flaxman, W.	3056	"	Nicholls, W. D.
2025	"	Fair, D. H.	2992	"	Norris, C.
2817	"	Golding, C. G.	2818	"	Pearce, C. H.
3171	"	Green, E.	3080	"	Pye, O. G.
2922	"	Helliwell, T. H.	3280	"	Pattman, W.
2900	"	Hickling, H.	3366	"	Pell, H. W.

3482 Trooper Penn, F. T. E.	3844 Trooper Smith, A. C.
2529 " Paget, F.	4169 " Spendlove, H. L.
2759 " Proberts, J.	4280 " Simpkins, F. J.
3429 " Palmer, S. C.	3518 " Toogood, G.
2929 " Roberts, W. H.	3003 " Thompson, W. H.
2859 " Russell, C. F.	2876 " Wood, J.
2287 " Ruscoe, A. C.	2979 " White, J. J.
2882 " Redley, H.	2739 " Woodward, W.
3155 " Rimmer, C.	2905 " Westley, R. W.
2682 " Rogers, F. S.	2741 " Whittaker, S.
2870 " Scothern, J.	2952 " Williamson, P.
2686 " Sollars, S. E.	3409 " Whitehead, W.
2345 " Streeter, H.	3044 " Winter, G.
2447 " Savage, H.	4422 " West, R. H.
2959 " Spoor, C. R.	2852 " Westcott, P.
2855 " Sillence, A. S.	

At Home.

3375 Trooper Phillips, W. C.	4664 Trooper Woolfe, F. B.
------------------------------	----------------------------

Nominal Roll of Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of the Cavalry of the Line, attached to First Life Guards, who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

CORPORALS-OF-HORSE.

20753 Corporal-of-Horse Boyles, A., 1st Dragoons.	
5358 " Colclough, H., 6th Dragoons.	
5821 " Fraser, E., 3rd Dragoon Guards.	
5852 " Middleton, W., 3rd Dragoon Guards.	

CORPORALS.

6175 Corporal Critchley, J., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.	
5380 " Kirkpatrick, J., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.	
6136 " Oliver, W., 1st Dragoon Guards.	
21084 " O'Toole, C., 6th Dragoons.	
288 " Turner, H., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.	

LANCE-CORPORALS.

5765 Lance-Corporal Duff, C., 2nd Dragoons.	
5193 " Maidment, E., 5th Dragoon Guards.	
6318 " Rich, A. E., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.	
5638 " Vann, W. H., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.	

PRIVATES.

5016	Private	Atwood, A., 2nd Dragoons.
5684	„	Anderson, E., 6th Dragoons.
42	„	Burnett, F. M., 1st Dragoons.
3583	„	Brockwell, R., 1st Dragoon Guards.
4425	„	Bow, W., 6th Dragoons.
1715	„	Barwell, D., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
5321	„	Bates, F., 6th Dragoon Guards.
6249	„	Brown, T., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
5513	„	Black, W., 6th Dragoons.
8267	„	Buffham, W. A., 2nd Dragoons.
6324	„	Boddie, J. H., 1st Dragoon Guards.
653	„	Bolton, W., 5th Dragoon Guards.
5324	„	Buckett, R., 5th Dragoon Guards.
5836	„	Cootes, H., 6th Dragoons.
6196	„	Cunningham, C. H., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
6300	„	Cowley, G., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
5409	„	Campbell, E., 6th Dragoon Guards.
5507	„	Dykes, W., 6th Dragoons.
4946	„	Davies, A., 6th Dragoons.
5811	„	Dormer, C., 6th Dragoons.
5833	„	Etchells, E., 6th Dragoons.
5958	„	Elliot, G., 1st Dragoon Guards.
2520	„	Green, C. C. V., 6th Dragoons.
5211	„	Gray, A. J., 5th Dragoon Guards.
2510	„	Hamilton, J., 6th Dragoons.
5223	„	Hopkins, E. E., 5th Dragoon Guards.
8231	„	King, T., 2nd Dragoons.
5726	„	Keefe, W., 6th Dragoons.
6225	„	Line, M., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
8939	„	Lewis, H., 6th Dragoon Guards.
4507	„	Moody, J., 6th Dragoons.
4985	„	Miller, W., 6th Dragoons.
5342	„	McDermott, H., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
6256	„	Macdonald, T., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
5421	„	Naismith, T., 6th Dragoon Guards.
5415	„	Ordway, J., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
6360	„	Pickett, C., 6th Dragoons.
6031	„	Pike, J., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
2682	„	Phillip, E. A., 6th Dragoon Guards.
5005	„	Randall, J., 5th Dragoon Guards.
4712	„	Richards, F., 1st Dragoons.
9180	„	Rudge, E. J., 6th Dragoon Guards.
5986	„	Rowledge, E., 1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
958	„	Richardson, A., 1st Dragoons.

6015	Private	Rose, F. S.,	1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
6886	„	Spenceley, E. H.,	7th Dragoon Guards.
5235	„	Smart, R.,	3rd Dragoon Guards.
5381	„	Skelly, S.,	6th Dragoons.
5963	„	Simpson, E.,	1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
5308	„	Taylor, A. H.,	1st (King's) Dragoon Guards.
8458	„	Wright, B.,	3rd Dragoon Guards.
4629	„	Ward, T.,	5th Dragoon Guards.
5494	„	Weston, P.,	2nd Dragoon Guards.
6675	„	Woolward, E.,	7th Dragoon Guards.

Nominal Roll of First Life Guards, serving with Household Battalion, who have been killed in action or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

SQUADRON-CORPORAL-MAJOR.

2899 Squadron-Corporal-Major Marriage, F. G.

CORPORALS-OF-HORSE.

3439	Corporal-of-Horse	Dunn, G. R.
4008	„	Jeffery, J. W.
4003	„	Tilbury, J. W. P.

CORPORALS.

3990	Corporal	Penfold, J. W.	3485	Corporal	Ruthven, J.
4076	„	Reid, W.	3900	„	Smedmore, V. D.
3102	„	Rudge, C. T.	3888	„	West, F. J.

LANCE-CORPORALS.

3744	Lance-Corporal	Chandler, J.
3940	„	Warwick, J. C.

TROOPERS.

2945	Trooper	Adams, E. V.	3972	Trooper	Drew, A.
3943	„	Burch, A. P.	4124	„	Daines, A.
4055	„	Brown, A.	4080	„	Darley, J. J.
4002	„	Birkett, T. E.	4017	„	Dawson, S.
3958	„	Cooper, A. R.	4257	„	Francis, J. E.
4126	„	Craig, T. W.	3090	„	Foster, F.
4157	„	Chacksfield, E.	4106	„	Gates, W. J.
3877	„	Denny, W. T.	3991	„	Gill, J.
3875	„	Dickinson, F.	4140	„	Gott, C. H.

H.C.

9

226 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

3824	Trooper	Howell, R. W.	4226	Trooper	Sermon, A. H.
4033	"	Holmes, A. E.	4217	"	Starkey, T. G.
3951	"	Hoyland, J.	4142	"	Seep, F. H.
3206	"	Horne, J.	3925	"	Scriven, G.
3433	"	Hickson, L.	4047	"	Thornton, A.
4031	"	Jennings, G. A.	3882	"	Travers, G.
3934	"	Jenkins, C. R.	3639	"	Twizell, T. H.
3629	"	Jeffery, R. C.	4024	"	Tyler, A. G.
2759	"	Morrison, F. G.	3936	"	Viney, H. W.
4172	"	Morton, W. A.	3874	"	Wood, A.
3937	"	Mewmarsh, P. E.	4086	"	Wheeler, O. R.
3856	"	Nye, H. R.	3205	"	White, R.
3763	"	Parrott, A.	4211	"	Watson, E.
4039	"	Pope, C. H.	4082	"	Wood, H. D.
3930	"	Rawson, W.			

At Home.

4159 Trooper Freeman, P. E. V.

Nominal Roll of Men of the First Life Guards, serving with Household Siege Battery, who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

TROOPERS.

200654	Trooper	Haimes, C. S.	200651	Trooper	Rogers, D.
200619	"	Hirst, H.			

SECOND LIFE GUARDS.

Nominal Roll of Officers who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

Lieutenant-Colonel T. G. J. Torrie.
 Major Hon. H. Dawnay.
 Captain Hon. A. O'Neill.
 Captain A. M. Vandeleur.
 Captain F. P. C. Pemberton.
 Lieutenant A. G. Murray Smith.
 Lieutenant Sir R. G. V. Duff.
 Lieutenant A. C. Hobson.

ROLL OF HONOUR

227

Lieutenant C. E. Gunther.
 Lieutenant V. J. Ferguson.
 2nd-Lieutenant W. S. Peterson.
 2nd-Lieutenant F. D. A. Blofeld.
 2nd-Lieutenant S. J. Townsend.
 2nd-Lieutenant J. A. Lovell.
 Temporary Lieutenant E. W. Butler.
 Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant L. S. Ward Price.

ATTACHED SECOND LIFE GUARDS.

Captain J. F. Todd, 30th C.I.H.
 Lieutenant J. A. S. C. Anstruther, 6th Dragoon Guards.
 Lieutenant A. W. Gale, 2nd Reserve Cavalry.

Nominal Roll of Non-Commissioned Officers and Men
 who have been killed in action, or who have died of
 wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-
 1918 :—

Abroad.

CORPORALS-OF-HORSE.

2400	Corporal-of-Horse	Austin, A. E.
2206	"	Backhouse, A. H.
2216	"	Dean, C. E.
2405	"	Ellison, A.
1921	"	Marsh, R. J. F.
2420	"	More, R. A.
2460	"	Stevenson, W. C.
2515	"	Wells, C.
2528	"	Wilkins, A. H.

At Home.

2083	Corporal-of-Horse	Coxhead, C.
2640	"	Crane, G.
2705	"	Mackie, P.
2468	Farrier-Staff-Corporal	Parker, A. D.

Abroad.

CORPORALS.

2961	Corporal	Bullivant, A.	2741	Corporal	Merchant, V.
2731	"	Dean, A. C. N.	2596	"	Taylor, M. G.
2671	"	Forde, P.			

228 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

At Home.

3719 Corporal Michie, J.

Abroad.

LANCE-CORPORALS.

2846 Lance-Corporal Butler, W. H.
 2765 " Hartley, H. E.
 2763 " Langford, W. J.
 2766 " Tremlett, A. C.
 3107 " Thomas, A. L.

TROOPERS.

3731 Trooper Aspland, E. A.	2630 Trooper McKellar, F.
3606 " Ayers, E. A.	2778 " McCluskey, J.
2516 " Birdsall, W. L.	2783 " Mills, F. E.
2633 " Bryce, J.	2894 " Monkhouse, J. W.
2725 " Black, D.	3176 " Mendies, H.
2789 " Bradshaw, F. M.	3241 " Maude, C. G.
2810 " Boyce, H. G.	2808 " Marriott, G. W.
3201 " Bourne, A.	2451 " Owens, E. H.
2803 " Clements, T. H.	2508 " Payne, F.
2871 " Clark, W.	2634 " Potts, S. J. A.
2929 " Cooper, E.	2756 " Potter, C. J.
2938 " Constable, J. T.	2812 " Pollard, A.
2695 " Davis, H.	3155 " Puddifoot, J.
2900 " De Laine, A. E.	2898 " Randall, S. J.
3300 " Dixon, H.	2899 " Rouse, M. H.
3549 " Dutton, W. G.	2857 " Smith, R.
3773 " Edghill, N. A.	2905 " Stevens, S. J.
2543 " Freeman, R.	2939 " Seymour, A. E.
3403 " Fawcett, B.	2952 " Smout, A. E.
2535 " Goulding, C. R.	2674 " Tyler, H. A.
2668 " Herring, N. C.	2712 " Taylor, C. A.
2867 " Hagues, A. G.	2970 " Towers, R.
3480 " Hodgson, C.	2978 " Tilley, P. J.
3006 " Hawkins, G. K.	3124 " Tyson, W.
2977 " Hutchinson, A. J.	2648 " Tully, G.
2843 " Hawkins, W.	3941 " Tullett, H. R.
2919 " Johnson, B.	2469 " Wackett, A.
3207 " Jackson, F.	2822 " Woods, A.
2782 " Keene, F. C.	2877 " Wild, L.
3351 " Kenny, J.	3083 " Wright, F. S.
3171 " Kingshott, W.	3181 " Witcomb, W.
2337 " Lindley, J. W.	3266 " Whatmough, G.
2804 " Lovelock, W. J.	2823 " Wallis, C.

At Home.

2343	Trooper Bailey, J. W.	3249	Trooper Morrison, J.
2004	„ Brown, W. T.	2328	„ Phillips, A.
3933	„ Bloom, G.	2999	„ Robson, J.
2060	„ Freeman, H. S.	3482	„ Wilson, R.
3650	„ Hodges, H. W.	2343	„ Barley, J. W.

Nominal Roll of Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of the Cavalry of the Line, attached to the Second Life Guards, who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

CORPORAL-OF-HORSE.

13324 Corporal-of-Horse Kelly, W., Lancers.

PRIVATES.

6360	Private Archer, O. J., 17th Lancers.
6417	„ Allison, C., 17th Lancers.
6514	„ Adams, 17th Lancers.
1174	„ Beck, —, 11th Hussars.
4986	„ Bugler, G., 11th Hussars.
2484	„ Batchelor, J., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
4633	„ Burgess, W. G., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
5098	„ Bachelor, H., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
5292	„ Buckley, E. A., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
2498	„ Bell, R., 6th Dragoons.
4727	„ Beckhurst, J. W., 6th Dragoons.
6488	„ Burke, J., 2nd Dragoon Guards.
393	„ Blackwell, E., 17th Lancers.
5496	„ Brandrum, W., 17th Lancers.
6351	„ Bryant, J. W., 17th Lancers.
7458	„ Brenchley, C. F., 17th Lancers.
2691	„ Cameron, W., 6th Dragoons.
481	„ Chapman, G., 17th Lancers.
4922	„ Cox, J., 17th Lancers.
6487	„ Clark, J., 17th Lancers.
6520	„ Cook, T., 17th Lancers.
328	„ Crow, A., 16th Lancers.
4602	„ Carver, E., 16th Lancers.
5315	„ Dawes, T. R., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
4774	„ Deverill, E., 17th Lancers.

230 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

6083	Private	Dockeray, R., 17th Lancers.
6551	"	Davies, T., 17th Lancers.
6691	"	Davison, J., 5th Lancers.
5211	"	Darbyshire, H., 3rd Res. Cavalry Regt.
6404	"	Ellis, H. J., 21st Lancers.
6421	"	Ernscliffe, F. G., 11th Hussars.
1132	"	Fisher, J., 6th Dragoon Guards.
1216	"	Fuller, T., 6th Dragoon Guards.
6591	"	Foreman, R., 5th Lancers.
5765	"	Gilmartin, P., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
4192	"	Greiner, C. W. H., 16th Lancers.
4980	"	Gore, W., 21st Lancers.
5370	"	Hancock, J., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
5497	"	Hodgins, J., 6th Dragoons.
4373	"	Hanna, C., 6th Dragoon Guards.
5577	"	Hewitt, A., 17th Lancers.
6197	"	Hambley, B., 17th Lancers.
6306	"	Hughes, B., 17th Lancers.
10196	"	Harrington, A., 3rd Res. Cavalry Regt.
4233	"	Jacqueman, J., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
5500	"	Jones, B. J., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
4643	"	Jones, A., 17th Lancers.
4503	"	Jordan, A. A., 16th Lancers.
3839	"	Kitchen, W., 17th Lancers.
5948	"	Kingswell, A., 17th Lancers.
477	"	Lynch, O., 17th Lancers.
6149	"	Lloyd, F. C., 17th Lancers.
6481	"	Lea, G. E., 17th Lancers.
7308	"	Moore, J., 13th Hussars.
6962	"	McAulay, W., 13th Hussars.
4314	"	McLeod, R., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
3778	"	Murray, A., 6th Dragoons.
5391	"	McDermott, P., 6th Dragoon Guards.
474	"	Mason, G., 17th Lancers.
875	"	Mudd, S. G., 17th Lancers.
6346	"	McLaren, D., 17th Lancers.
3861	"	Mead, J., 16th Lancers.
5013	"	Mews, W., 16th Lancers.
3356	"	Moulson, C. E., 14th Hussars.
4718	"	McIntosh, J., 13th Hussars.
6454	"	Neild, W., 17th Lancers.
1921	"	Nevitte, A. H., 18th Hussars.
955	"	O'Brien, P., 21st Lancers.
23722	"	Oram, G., 18th Hussars.
4058	"	Pacey, E., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
6175	"	Pettigrew, J. A., 17th Lancers.

6493	Private Pratt, J., 17th Lancers.
6523	„ Payne, H., 17th Lancers.
438	„ Pierson, A., 20th Hussars.
5394	„ Peacock, C., 3rd Reserve Cavalry Regt.
9884	„ Quirke, D., 2nd Dragoon Guards.
483	„ Quelch, C., 17th Lancers.
466	„ Rafferty, P., 17th Lancers.
6311	„ Robinson, F., 17th Lancers.
745	„ Squire, J., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
5210	„ Sullivan, P., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
5419	„ Stewart, W., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
6025	„ Strachan, D., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
8467	„ Sculler, A., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
6418	„ Shirtcliffe, J. W., 2nd Dragoon Guards.
3837	„ Stephenson, F., 17th Lancers.
5520	„ Spencer, J. H., 17th Lancers.
6073	„ Saville, J., 17th Lancers.
9222	„ Sheehan, P., 11th Hussars.
4901	„ Thowtes, I. E., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
5732	„ Thrussell, A. G., 11th Hussars.
6715	„ Watson, J., 8th Hussars.
3653	„ White, H. J. F., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
3741	„ Wathen, A., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
4960	„ White, A. H., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
5106	„ Wickson, F. C., 3rd Dragoon Guards.
5384	„ Westbrook, W., 17th Lancers.
6123	„ Wagstaffe, F., 17th Lancers.
6204	„ Whitbread, F. S., 17th Lancers.
6356	„ Williams, J. W., 17th Lancers.
6473	„ Wassmer, H. S., 17th Lancers.
4996	„ Wardle, A., 16th Lancers.
5226	„ Walker, J., 11th Hussars.

At Home.

3657	Private Fordham, R., 13th Hussars.
1200	„ Lawson, —, 6th Dragoon Guards.
7934	„ Phillips, H., 2nd Dragoon Guards.
7668	„ Pearson, A., 3rd Reserve Cavalry Regt.
5315	„ McCallum, A., 3rd Dragoon Guards.

Nominal Roll of Second Life Guards, serving with Household Battalion, who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

232 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

Abroad.

CORPORALS.

3279	Corporal Burrows, R. C.	3568	Corporal Sadler, W. R.
3702	" Giles, F.	3592	" Terrell, C. H.
3817	" Jackson, A. E.	3903	" Williams, E.
3339	" Murrell, F. J.		

LANCE-CORPORALS.

3700	Lance-Corporal Hawthorne, E. F.
3801	" Oliphant, E. W.
3986	" Silver, A.
3687	" Weller, A. J.

TROOPERS.

3888	Trooper Budd, H. V.	3867	Trooper Johnson, W. E.
3346	" Cockshott, C.	3813	" King, H.
3982	" Choules, A.	3703	" Leask, S.
3287	" Carter, F.	3956	" Mallett, F. V.
3681	" Corcoran, J.	3225	" Morris, F. R. W.
3913	" Collinson, J. G.	3831	" Newell, J. J.
3661	" Danby, S.	3837	" Offer, E.
3827	" Dunne, A.	3196	" Part, F. G.
3818	" Dodd, A. S.	3588	" Pratt, P.
3810	" Dunsdon, E. D.	3984	" Parsons, H. W.
3297	" Dickson, J. C.	3854	" Read, E. J.
3748	" Flowers, E. W.	3156	" Sharp, A.
3704	" Grundy, G.	3966	" Sykes, R.
3684	" Griffiths, A. W.	3526	" Shipton, J. R.
3227	" Hodgetts, W.	3834	" Townsend, F. C.
3688	" Higgins, F.	3969	" Waite, J. H.

Nominal Roll of Second Life Guards, serving with Household Siege Battery, who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

TROOPERS.

4074	Trooper Chapman, A. G.	3858	Trooper Springford, I.
4188	" Lockhart, W. J.	4113	" Williams, F. A.
4097	" Scott, J. F.		

ROYAL HORSE GUARDS.

Nominal Roll of Officers who have been killed in action,
or who have died of wounds or disease, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

LIEUTENANT-COLONELS.

G. C. Wilson, M.V.O.

H. E. Brassey.

MAJORS.

H. W. Viscount Crichton, M.V.O., D.S.O.*

L. A. Tilney, M.C.

CAPTAINS.

G. V. S. Bowlby.

A. A. MacIntosh.

H. H. Wilson, D.S.O.

LIEUTENANTS.

Lord Worsley.

G. V. Naylor-Leyland.

Hon. C. E. A. Philipps.

T. G. Davson.

P. V. Heath.

Baron de Gunsberg.

SECOND-LIEUTENANTS.

Lord S. D. Compton.

G. H. Pullen.

W. L. Breese.

Viscount Wendover.

Hon. A. Coke.

R. L. Sale.

Hon. F. Lambton.

At Home.

BRIGADIER-GENERAL.

Lord Binning, M.V.O.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL.

W. D. Mann-Thomson.

MAJORS.

Sir J. C. Willoughby, D.S.O.

Hon. A. H. C. Hanbury-Tracy, C.M.G.

CAPTAIN.

Viscount C. J. A. C. Ingestre.

* His body, found and interred at Verving, was re-buried in British Cemetery, Zendvoorde.

234 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

SERVING WITH OTHER UNITS.

Abroad.

CAPTAINS.

A. L. Palmer, D.S.O., Welsh Guards.
W. Newcombe, 1st Royal Dragoons.
C. H. Bodington, Household Battalion.

LIEUTENANTS.

G. Stirling, M.C., Scots Guards.
S. Miller, Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers.
J. Jordon, 4th Dragoon Guards.
H. H. O. Bridgeman, Household Battalion.
R. H. L. Whitelaw, Household Battalion.

Nominal Roll of Warrant Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918:—

Abroad.

SQUADRON-QUARTERMASTER-CORPORAL.

776 Squadron-Quartermaster-Corporal Norris, F. H.

CORPORALS-OF-HORSE.

1481	Corporal-of-Horse Cole, W.
1222	„ Ervin, W. G.
1412	„ Few, A. G. T.
1054	„ Harris, J. C.
1462	„ Harper, W. G. G.
1306	„ Nelson, L. J.
1385	„ Wells, W. A.

CORPORALS.

1305	Corporal Baker, W.	1609	Corporal Owen, R.
1296	„ Browning, M.	1533	„ Waite, C. A.
1688	„ Claybyn, W. A.	1454	„ White, C. H.
1341	„ Eales, E. W.		

LANCE-CORPORALS.

1475	Lance-Corporal Burfield, F. H. T.
1564	„ Dack, O. S.
2279	„ Dickie, J. M., D.C.M.
1548	„ Harper, F. H. A.

SADDLE-TREE-MAKER.

1756 Saddle-Tree-Maker Matthews, C. W.

TROOPERS.

2075 Trooper Boyce, A. F.	1368 Trooper Jenkins, F.
1717 " Brain, H.	1636 " King, C.
1491 " Cade, J. J.	1954 " Lancaster, T.
2136 " Chase, F. W.	2304 " Marshall, G.
1622 " Colsell, C. E.	1252 " Meyer, G. E.
1769 " Cooper, S. T.	1635 " Middleton, M.
1473 " Corlett, J.	1559 " Molyneux, H. B.
1283 " Davies, J. B.	1597 " Morris, C. F.
1569 " Ditcher, F. C.	1456 " Munson, P. E.
1708 " Edgeley, C. S.	2587 " Nicholson, E. J.
2148 " Forshaw, D.	1417 " Oatley, S.
1494 " Hastings, H. A.	1482 " Ogglesby, H. H.
2322 " Hawes, E. J.	1840 " Pear, J. W.
1884 " Hallett, T. B.	1541 " Perry, W. C.
1601 " Hawkes, G. N. F.	775 " Scott, R. W.
1709 " Haynes, M. G.	1450 " Sherlock, D. F.
1265 " Heron, A. E.	2306 " Small, W. E.
2011 " Heywood, J.	1316 " Smith, G.
2122 " Holman, S. F.	1415 " Terry, F.
2392 " Hoyland, G. N.	1594 " Thurston, S. C.

TRUMPETER.

1357 Trumpeter Scott, A. H. W. G. C.

At Home.

SQUADRON-CORPORAL-MAJOR.

874 Squadron-Corporal-Major Shead, J. W. E.

CORPORALS-OF-HORSE.

1589 Corporal-of-Horse Munson, A. H.	
1638 " Heard, R. W. D.	
1699 " Dixon, R. (Hon. Cpl.-Major).	

CORPORAL.

2417 Corporal Farren, A.

TROOPERS.

2132 Trooper Avery, M. J.	1991 Trooper Nelson, G. W.
1428 " Collyer, F. H.	1986 " Newman, J. G. W.
1900 " George, H.	1389 " Viall, S. J.
3110 " Grant, A.	

TRUMPETER.

1199 Trumpeter Fethon, C.

236 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

Nominal Roll of Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of the Cavalry of the Line, attached to the Royal Horse Guards, who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

CORPORALS-OF-HORSE.

6659	Corporal-of-Horse	Grainger, J., 8th Hussars.
45078	"	Piggott, 13th Hussars.
5307	"	Rooke, E., 13th Hussars.

CORPORAL.

5268 Corporal Mutter, L. S., 20th Hussars.

LANCE-CORPORALS.

5464	Lance-Corporal	Broom, W., 14th Hussars.
5256	"	Brown, J., 14th Hussars.
5645	"	Healey, A., 10th Hussars.
5655	"	Owen, W. H., 14th Hussars.
10974	"	Riley, G., 11th Hussars.
4143	"	Shaw, S., 14th Hussars.

PRIVATES.

9504	Private	Arrigoni, A. L., 20th Hussars.
5834	"	Anderson, A. P., 13th Hussars.
10687	"	Arrowsmith P., 20th Hussars.
4736	"	Austin, G. W., 20th Hussars.
5764	"	Baker, S., 14th Hussars.
5318	"	Barlow, T., 20th Hussars.
4499	"	Brooks, L. J., 14th Hussars.
4582	"	Bunch, F. J., 20th Hussars.
8368	"	Cochrane, A., 6th Dragoon Guards.
4801	"	Cope, H. A., 7th Hussars.
3075	"	Edwards, A. J., 14th Hussars.
4396	"	Foster, G., 20th Hussars.
1194	"	Gamage, W. P., 13th Hussars.
45554	"	Gant, C., 7th Hussars.
4748	"	Garty, S., 20th Hussars.
10686	"	Grainger, R., 20th Hussars.
9954	"	Griffiths, C., 6th Dragoon Guards.
8390	"	Hadwen, G. S., 6th Dragoon Guards.
5055	"	Hall, J., 14th Hussars.
4649	"	Hallett, H., 20th Hussars.
6923	"	Haines, H., 13th Hussars.
4872	"	Hawksworth, W., 20th Hussars.

10678	Private	Hearne, W.,	6th Dragoon Guards.
4531	„	Higgleton, H.,	20th Hussars.
4745	„	Hillier, D.,	13th Hussars.
6865	„	Hopkins, A.,	8th Hussars.
8336	„	Howie, G.,	2nd Dragoons.
16206	„	Hutchison, A. Y.,	11th Hussars.
3103	„	Jones, E.,	20th Hussars.
8441	„	Kearney, A. G.,	6th Dragoon Guards.
5394	„	Lathbury, J.,	20th Hussars.
5319	„	McColgan, C.,	14th Hussars.
8772	„	McCombe, J.,	13th Hussars.
6542	„	McSweeney, D.,	8th Hussars.
9559	„	McVay, T.,	20th Hussars.
5083	„	Montgomery, J.,	6th Dragoon Guards.
4692	„	Nicoll, A.,	3rd Dragoon Guards.
4238	„	Patterson, A.,	14th Hussars.
5587	„	Pickavance, P.,	14th Hussars.
7347	„	Powell, B. P.,	3rd Dragoon Guards.
10439	„	Read, L. G.,	20th Hussars.
6400	„	Richardson, E.,	8th Hussars.
4484	„	Rothwell, A.,	8th Hussars.
9845	„	Smith, F.,	20th Hussars.
5461	„	Smith, C.,	14th Hussars.
6870	„	Smith, E.,	13th Hussars.
4925	„	Stevenson, J.,	14th Hussars.
5472	„	Strutt, H. W.,	20th Hussars.
3070	„	Sutton, W.,	14th Hussars.
5742	„	Taunt, A. F.,	14th Hussars.
5408	„	Taylor, J.,	3rd Dragoon Guards.
6975	„	Toombs, W.,	13th Hussars.
5478	„	Tucknott, W.,	20th Hussars.
4034	„	Tyrell, E.,	14th Hussars.
5445	„	Walker, J.,	14th Hussars.
6138	„	Weaver, H.,	13th Hussars.
5591	„	Willcocks, G.,	14th Hussars.
6473	„	Wright, J.,	8th Hussars.
4518	„	Wright, L.,	10th Hussars.

At Home.

6610	Private	Cronk, F.,	8th Hussars.
5880	„	Dean, J. W.,	7th Hussars.
6352	„	Gatland, W.,	7th Hussars.
5546	„	Guest, R.,	14th Hussars.
5569	„	Kemp, F.,	13th Hussars.
5208	„	Morris, G.,	20th Hussars.

238 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

Nominal Roll of Royal Horse Guards, serving with Household Battalion, who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

CORPORALS-OF-HORSE.

2445	Corporal-of-Horse	Pateman, P. C.
1719	"	Rumney, F.
1805	"	Reynolds, E. C.
842	"	Rayner, T. C. H.
1051	"	Sellars, E.

CORPORALS.

771	Corporal	Farrar, J.	348	Corporal	Ryan, S. W. E.
2698	"	Lee, H. T.	1691	"	Scally, J. W.
824	"	Morris, L.			

LANCE-CORPORALS.

1156	Lance-Corporal	Boxall, R.
778	"	Gautrey, N. V.
794	"	Langtree, J. E.
473	"	Mennell, W. E.
508	"	Russell, V. V.
107	"	Smith, W. F.

TROOPERS.

2624	Trooper	Abbott, W. H.	798	Trooper	Lewis, C. S.
1206	"	Bardell, E.	2708	"	Munn, C. W.
1108	"	Burton, A. M.	141	"	McElmurray, G.
722	"	Bruty, A. J.	187	"	Morrison, J. F.
368	"	Barnett, E.	822	"	Mann, J.
1660	"	Ball, F. A.	825	"	Meekings, H. J.
1742	"	Campion, F. V.	826	"	McNeill, R.
407	"	Dolphin, F. E.	1249	"	Mullane, J.
84	"	Elliott, W. R.	1186	"	Nicholls, E.
125	"	Eyden, J. W.	2630	"	Osborne, F. W.
205	"	Emmott, C.	1142	"	Syddall, L.
739	"	Ecclestone, E.	60	"	Taylor, J. W.
415	"	Ford, G. W.	109	"	Thompson, S.
422	"	Gapp, E. J.	888	"	Thompson, E. R.
39	"	Holman, W.	891	"	Underwood, J. W.
447	"	Hilliam, W. P.	67	"	Wale, A. G.
782	"	Hackett, F.	899	"	Webb, C. G.
1216	"	Haynes, J. W.	1248	"	Walmsley, R. G.
2705	"	Jackson, F. W.			

Nominal Roll of Royal Horse Guards, serving with Household Siege Battery, who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Abroad.

197877 Paid Lance-Bombardier Smith, J. H.
197878 Gunner Andrews, A. H.
197846 „ Goodey, A. G. S.
197835 „ Timms, R. E.

HOUSEHOLD BATTALION.

Nominal Roll of Officers, excluding those transferred from the Regiments of Household Cavalry, who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

Lieutenant C. S. Beechcroft.
2nd-Lieutenant K. W. Bird.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant N. Bonham-Carter.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant W. H. Bolitho.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant T. G. Bower.
Lieutenant A. P. Godfrey.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant J. E. Lowrie.
Temporary Captain H. C. Pember.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant C. V. Rice.
Lieutenant L. Scott.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant L. F. Stockwood.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant J. D'u Tyrwhitt-Drake.
2nd-Lieutenant O. Wakefield.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant S. D. Williams.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant G. E. Whitelaw.

Nominal Roll of Warrant Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men who were transferred to the Household Battalion from Regiments other than the Household Cavalry, who have been killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

R.-Q.-M.-C.-M.

1981 R.-Q.-M.-C.-M. Jones, J. H., Staffordshire Yeomanry.

240 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

CORPORAL-OF-HORSE.

1957 Corporal-of-Horse Twyman, G. W., East Kent Yeomanry.

ACTING-CORPORAL-OF-HORSE.

1963 Acting-Corporal-of-Horse Nicholls, T. W., Norfolk Yeomanry.

PRIVATES.

1707 Private Anderson, H. T., East Kent Yeomanry.
1716 „ McCartney, G., East Kent Yeomanry.
1718 „ Pattason, A. D., East Kent Yeomanry.
1731 „ Yates, A. E., East Kent Yeomanry.
1737 „ Carrier, H. T., East Kent Yeomanry.
1739 „ Kenneday, C. J., East Kent Yeomanry.
1749 „ Kay, R., East Kent Yeomanry.
1757 „ Bowdery, C. H., East Kent Yeomanry.
1761 „ Butchers, G. F., Sussex Yeomanry.
1767 „ Squibb, H. A., Sussex Yeomanry.
1768 „ Griffiths, S., Sussex Yeomanry.
1774 „ Beall, G. P., Sussex Yeomanry.
1777 „ Holloway, P. W., Sussex Yeomanry.
1778 „ Smith, H. G., Sussex Yeomanry.
1780 „ Whiteman, E. M., Sussex Yeomanry.
1785 „ Simmonds, H. C., Sussex Yeomanry.
1806 „ Woodhouse, H. L., West Kent Yeomanry.
1814 „ Newell, A. E., West Kent Yeomanry.
1821 „ Bent, F. E., West Kent Yeomanry.
1823 „ Berryman, C. H., West Kent Yeomanry.
1829 „ Pirie, W., Lanark Yeomanry.
1836 „ McSharry, F., Lanark Yeomanry.
1839 „ Thomson, T., Lanark Yeomanry.
1840 „ Hannah, S., Lanark Yeomanry.
1844 „ McMurdo, I., Lanark Yeomanry.
1850 „ Hawthorne, J., Lanark Yeomanry.
1851 „ Clark, G. F., Lanark Yeomanry.
1852 „ Marshall, W. G., Lanark Yeomanry.
1860 „ O'Neill, P., Lanark Yeomanry.
1867 „ Turnbull, J., Lanark Yeomanry.
1870 „ Bertram, G., Lanark Yeomanry.
1884 „ Blunt, S. J., Norfolk Yeomanry.
1891 „ Carver, H. J., Norfolk Yeomanry.
1896 „ Groves, H., Norfolk Yeomanry.
1902 „ Nightingale, W., Norfolk Yeomanry.
1909 „ Sargeant, E. T., Norfolk Yeomanry.
1910 „ Scott, T. J., Norfolk Yeomanry.
1967 „ Pryke, G. S., Norfolk Yeomanry.

ROLL OF HONOUR

241

1972	Private	Thurlow, A. E.,	Norfolk Yeomanry.
1919	„	Watson, R.,	Ayr Yeomanry.
1922	„	Jones, J.,	Ayr Yeomanry.
1924	„	Cairns, J.,	Ayr Yeomanry.
1932	„	McInnes, J.,	Ayr Yeomanry.
1933	„	Dowie, W.,	Ayr Yeomanry.
1943	„	Paton, W. G.,	Ayr Yeomanry.

Nominal Roll of Non-Commissioned Officers and Men who did not belong to the three Household Cavalry Regiments, but joined the Household Brigade direct, who were killed in action, or who have died of wounds or disease during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

LANCE-CORPORALS.

1558	Lance-Corporal	Hogg, J.
1593	„	Strutt, R. H.
1702	„	Spillman, F. C.

TROOPERS.

460	Trooper	Langford, S. L.	1494	Trooper	Merriman, D.
817	„	Leech, R.	1509	„	Hawks, W. J.
1404	„	Stock, W. F.	1519	„	Hargreaves, H.
1409	„	Butterfield, A. J.	1526	„	Jones, E. R.
1412	„	Gill, H.	1527	„	Mawson, C. H.
1420	„	Burnett, C. L.	1545	„	McLachlan, G.
1423	„	Mitchell, W.	1548	„	Weeding, G.
1429	„	Thistlethwaite, E.	1552	„	Morrice, J.
1430	„	Rawson, R. F.	1563	„	Wilson, J. J.
1439	„	Forkes, A. B.	1567	„	Pitt, E.
1440	„	Salter, W. G. N.	1569	„	Pollitt, S.
1441	„	Parsons, W. J.	1572	„	Thompson, W.
1446	„	Wintle, F.	1575	„	Button, W. H.
1448	„	Musselle, F.	1584	„	Strong, W. N.
1450	„	Fry, P.	1610	„	Preston, J. A.
1458	„	Belchamber, W.	1613	„	Heyes, P. H.
1462	„	Dewey, F.	1614	„	Sharples, J. C.
1466	„	Carter, F. R.	1616	„	Barnaby, C. E.
1471	„	Clinker, J.	1620	„	Berry, W. J.
1476	„	Green, F.	1636	„	Bennett, E.
1481	„	Ronalds, S.	1637	„	Le Feaver, C.
1483	„	Slinger, H.	1639	„	Hatfield, C. E.
1491	„	Kenkins, J. S.	1644	„	Aspin, W.

R.C.

R

242 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

1645 Trooper Lewis, W. J.	2141 Trooper Bray, R.
1649 „ Harmer, W.	2142 „ Dann, A. E.
1650 „ Chatfield, G. H.	2143 „ Barton, J. E.
1651 „ Quarnton, T. A.	2145 „ Sargeant, F. W. B.
1660 „ Tansell, B.	2147 „ Hancock, C.
1673 „ Tindale, —.	2151 „ Barnes, G. E.
1678 „ Neeves, J. W.	2154 „ Potts, H. R.
1679 „ Clarke, E.	2156 „ Mellor, F.
1680 „ Ratley, L.	2158 „ Kingsnorth, A. N.
1682 „ Meeson, T.	2161 „ Jennings, W. A.
1688 „ Firth, J. N.	2163 „ Austin, F.
1690 „ Howell, F. P.	2167 „ Arnsworth, W.
1700 „ Wilkinson, T. W.	2173 „ Tucker, E. C.
1701 „ Boyce, J. F.	2175 „ Yarwood, J. B.
1704 „ Thirkettle, G.	2185 „ Knott, F. J.
1708 „ Anderson, A.	2199 „ Lee, T.
1717 „ McLachlan, J. B.	2200 „ Nolan, W. J.
1726 „ Gambrill, W.	2207 „ Randal, S.
1879 „ Ralph, J.	2228 „ Mumby, W. H.
1907 „ Rudram, F. V.	2231 „ Dawney, F.
1929 „ McLean, J.	2233 „ Hargraves, I.
1936 „ Mitchell, E. D.	2243 „ Haworth, F.
1940 „ Dewar, R. J. M.	2254 „ Barker, E.
2028 „ Hobbs, J. T.	2264 „ Pratt, A. G. D.
2033 „ Vines, W.	2272 „ Heath, F. J.
2044 „ Sykes, T. E.	2279 „ Windle, K.
2045 „ Carter, F.	2280 „ Barter, J.
2046 „ Kensett, W. B.	2282 „ Lovell, G. R.
2047 „ Ibbotson, G. T.	2288 „ Smith, G. R.
2048 „ Dow, J.	2289 „ Taylor, H. E.
2052 „ Williams, W. J.	2310 „ Stamford, W.
2067 „ Webb, L. R.	2311 „ Lees, A.
2068 „ Jeffery, G. C.	2315 „ Butterworth, H.
2077 „ Cooper, S. A.	2317 „ Small, A. H.
2080 „ Robinson, R.	2319 „ Ingleby, B.
2089 „ Lawton, L.	2328 „ Lucas, B.
2093 „ Herriett, C. R.	2334 „ Riddock, J.
2095 „ Tattle, H. R.	2354 „ Stephens, J.
2104 „ Wroot, G. E.	2359 „ Morrison, A. A.
2115 „ White, A.	2362 „ Gardener, E.
2122 „ Compton, W. G.	2368 „ Hoath, A. S.
2123 „ Whitehead, E. G.	2374 „ Sanders, C. J.
2128 „ Dow, E. J.	2379 „ Surrell, W. J.
2136 „ Miller, T. L.	2392 „ Potter, J. S.
2138 „ Boxall, E. B.	2394 „ Wedge, C.

2402 Trooper Barnes, R. E.	2617 Trooper Porter, N.
2408 „ Hope, H. E.	2620 „ Riches, C. E.
2418 „ Harrison, W. J.	2623 „ Turner, W. R.
2420 „ Rose, S.	2624 „ Stratton, F. W.
2422 „ Phillips, C.	2636 „ Pickworth, W. A.
2423 „ Lee, S. S.	2639 „ Robb, J.
2427 „ Baxter, W. W.	2651 „ Ashfield, A. J.
2431 „ Sadler, W.	2654 „ Parsons, W.
2437 „ Kennett, E. C.	2655 „ Butt, W. F.
2454 „ Kimber, F.	2679 „ Mitchell E. N.
2457 „ Howard, W. N.	2690 „ Hurd, J. L.
2467 „ Cass, J.	2708 „ Mann, C. W.
2470 „ Langhorne, S.	2722 „ Tattersall, E.
2479 „ Monks, C.	2729 „ McCartney, J.
2490 „ Birch, H.	2734 „ Ward, W.
2495 „ Head, A. B.	2748 „ Page, W. J.
2497 „ Howard, G.	2778 „ Seddon, A. H.
2501 „ Helmer, E. W.	2781 „ Brown, S.
2502 „ Jenner, S.	2784 „ Darbyshire, T.
2511 „ Bennett, H.	2795 „ Rathbone, F.
2515 „ Jones, D.	2804 „ Ford, F. C.
2523 „ Thomas, H. W.	2867 „ Crawford, W.
2536 „ Harrison, F. E.	2990 „ Bennett, E.
2540 „ Allsop, S.	3013 „ Appleby, S.
2546 „ Holyrake, R. C.	3032 „ Errington, G.
2554 „ Kilgner, J. M.	3048 „ Thompson, A.
2555 „ Hill, A. B.	3071 „ Fullerton, C. E. G.
2575 „ Blackburn, R. W.	3090 „ Lewis, W. J.
2578 „ Faithful, A. W.	3102 „ Pearson, J.
2583 „ Baldwin, J.	3124 „ Tompson, F. L.
2585 „ Haskell, W. J.	3166 „ Maple, A. H. J.
2595 „ Soper, E. B.	3170 „ Redman, J. W.
2599 „ Hider, C. T.	3244 „ Kiddie, M.
2607 „ Eustone, S.	3278 „ Harris, W. N.
2608 „ Hogan, W.	3313 „ Tabern, S.
2612 „ Barnes, J. K.	3314 „ Taylor, J. W.
2616 „ Grellier, F.	3328 „ Evans, G. L.

GUARDS MACHINE GUN REGIMENT

Nominal Roll of Warrant Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of the Household Cavalry who were killed in action or who died of wounds or disease while serving with the Guards Machine Gun Regiment during the European War, 1914-1918 :—

244 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

WARRANT OFFICERS CLASS II.

2048 Squadron-Corporal-Major Attenborough, G., D.C.M., 1st Life Guards.

3372 " Brown, W. W., 1st Life Guards.

3000 " Webb, W., 1st Life Guards.

SQUADRON-QUARTERMASTER CORPORALS.

2315 Squadron-Quartermaster-Corporal Horsman, A., M.M., 1st Life Guards.

2027 " " Vessey, G., 1st Life Guards.

CORPORALS-OF-HORSE.

2673 Corporal-of-Horse Boylin, G., 1st Life Guards.

2798 " Fleming, J., D.C.M., 1st Life Guards.

2960 " Waspé, W., 1st Life Guards.

ACTING-CORPORAL-OF-HORSE.

4339 Acting-Corporal-of-Horse Blommer, G., 2nd Life Guards.

CORPORAL.

3995 Corporal Riddler, W., 1st Life Guards.

ACTING CORPORALS.

4434 Acting-Corporal Dash, E. E., 2nd Life Guards.

4911 " Webbing, B., 2nd Life Guards.

LANCE-CORPORALS.

3647 Lance-Corporal Finlay, W., 1st Life Guards.

3004 " Finnimore, H., 1st Life Guards.

3112 " Goddard, D., 1st Life Guards.

5525 " Greaves, A. K., Royal Horse Guards.

3721 " Penn, F., 1st Life Guards.

TRUMPETER.

2556 Trumpeter Godwin, C., 1st Life Guards.

TROOPERS.

3192 Trooper Ainslie, J., 1st Life Guards.

3341 " Berterelli, J., 1st Life Guards.

3640 " Clay, E., 1st Life Guards.

3370 " Derenzy, T., 1st Life Guards.

3396 " Douglas, R., 1st Life Guards.

3168 " Downing, A., 1st Life Guards.

3328 " Fenwick, R., 1st Life Guards.

3917	Trooper	Geeson, H., 1st Life Guards.
3548	"	Gray, J., 1st Life Guards.
3104	"	Green, L., 1st Life Guards.
3216	"	Hamilton, A., 1st Life Guards.
3120	"	Harwood, H., 1st Life Guards.
3371	"	Hobday, W., 1st Life Guards.
2883	"	Hopper, T., 1st Life Guards.
3947	"	Isherwood, F., 1st Life Guards.
3600	"	Juniper, A., 1st Life Guards.
3860	"	Keeble, H., 1st Life Guards.
3149	"	Kercher, S. T., 1st Life Guards.
3725	"	King, C., 1st Life Guards.
3503	"	Lawrence, B., 1st Life Guards.
3634	"	Lindridge, A. G., 1st Life Guards.
3038	"	Mariner, E., 1st Life Guards.
3029	"	Moody, G., 1st Life Guards.
3698	"	Needs, E. L., 1st Life Guards.
3278	"	Ogbourne, H., 1st Life Guards.
3064	"	Page, H., 1st Life Guards.
3430	"	Ray, F., 1st Life Guards.
3091	"	Robb, A., 1st Life Guards.
3149	"	Rowland, A., 1st Life Guards.
3609	"	Royce, E., 1st Life Guards.
3127	"	Sartin, A., 1st Life Guards.
3080	"	Staniforth, H., 1st Life Guards.
3033	"	Taylor, H., 1st Life Guards.
3050	"	Thomas, F., 1st Life Guards.
3090	"	Toberty, H., 1st Life Guards.
3681	"	Turner, H., 1st Life Guards.
3035	"	Vye, G., 1st Life Guards.
3779	"	Worne, L., 1st Life Guards.
3237	"	Wright, B., 1st Life Guards.
3029	"	Young, O., 1st Life Guards.

MUSICIAN.

3086 Musician Smith, S., 1st Life Guards.

TROOPERS.

4317	Trooper	Barber, C. W., 2nd Life Guards.
4368	"	Buchanan, J., 2nd Life Guards.
4162	"	Edis, R., 2nd Life Guards.
4475	"	Fairchild, G. B., 2nd Life Guards.
4224	"	Hammond, N., 2nd Life Guards.
4025	"	Honey, J., 2nd Life Guards.
4074	"	Ireland, T., 2nd Life Guards.

246 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

4022	Trooper	Keen, F., 2nd Life Guards.
4062	„	Maskell, J. H., 2nd Life Guards.
4190	„	Merrick, F. R., 2nd Life Guards.
4703	„	Nesham, H. J., 2nd Life Guards.
4737	„	Pickhard, F. H., 2nd Life Guards.
4787	„	Savage, C., 2nd Life Guards.
4280	„	Simpkins, F., 2nd Life Guards.
4151	„	Smith, R. F., 2nd Life Guards.
4092	„	Smith, C. J., 2nd Life Guards.
4169	„	Spendlove, H., 2nd Life Guards.
4176	„	Stallwood, A., 2nd Life Guards.
4836	„	Steeds, F., 2nd Life Guards.
4844	„	Stone, T. P., 2nd Life Guards.
4422	„	West, R., 2nd Life Guards.
5074	„	Collins, R., Royal Horse Guards.

On the 4th May, 1924, the Memorial to the Household Cavalry was unveiled by Field-Marshal Earl Haig, who said :

“ It is my privilege to-day to attend the unveiling of this memorial, not only as Colonel of one of the three famous regiments whose gallantry it commemorates, but as the representative of his Majesty the King in whose service their gallant deeds were done.

“ We are grateful to his Majesty for this fresh proof of his interest in our regiments, and for this formal acknowledgment on the part of our Colonel-in-Chief of the valour and self-sacrifice of our fallen comrades. We are proud of the personal link which connects us with our King, and we respectfully assure him here in the presence of our dead that it will always be our earnest and loyal endeavour, even as it was theirs, to prove worthy of the position we hold and of the traditions our three regiments have won as the Household Cavalry of our Sovereign.

“ We have here in these scenes amid which we now stand, and in the memories they evoke, a high incentive to our endeavour. Many splendid stories of desperate chances bravely and surely taken, of unselfish and enduring heroism, go to make up the history of our regiments in war. But glorious as that history may be, the names of these Flanders villages—Wyttschaete, Klein Zillebeke, Zwarteleen, Zandvoorde—conjure up deeds as glorious and as fateful, and devotion as complete and unrestrained as any that can be found in the stories of the past.

“ Here in these Flanders fields, which to-day look at once so strange and so familiar to eyes which followed all the changes wrought upon

them by four years of war, the Household Cavalry Brigade took part in that wonderful defence by which, in October and November of 1914, the Allied Armies barred the way to Calais. In a war in which the opportunity for cavalry action was rare, they found here, at the commencement of the struggle, as was found elsewhere in its concluding stages, occasion to show the value still possessed by well-trained and disciplined mounted troops.

"It was the close for three long years of the war of movement, and it is not without interest, as a commentary upon modern war, that the most bloody and critical engagement in which British Cavalry took part was fought in the supreme effort which stabilised the line for those three years. We had had our share in the strenuous and exhausting days of marching, fighting and counter-marching which took us from Mons to the Marne, to the Aisne and finally to Ypres. The composite regiment which was sent to join the fourth Cavalry Brigade under General Bingham in August, 1914, had been in action at Mons, Elouges, Le Cateau, Nery, and in the battles of the Marne, and the Aisne. Then as part of the 2nd Cavalry Division under General Gough it had fought in the first battle of Messines, sharing the glory of the five British Cavalry Brigades, which with the assistance of the London Scottish, the 1st Connaught Rangers, and two Indian battalions, held a five mile front along the Messines-Wytschaete ridge for ten days against the attacks of five German cavalry divisions, supported by at least eight Jaeger battalions. Spread out in small parties—not the thin red line of old, but a dotted, very sparsely dotted line of khaki, the British Cavalry held, until on the 29th October the enemy brought up two infantry divisions and an overwhelming artillery to the assault. Even then, though the village of Messines was lost, Wytschaete and the main position on the ridge was held until the 1st November when some French infantry came forward to our assistance.

"Meanwhile, the remaining squadrons of the three regiments had crossed to Belgium with the 7th Division in the attempt to relieve Antwerp and after helping to cover the retreat of the gallant and sorely-tried Belgian Army, came into position here at Zandvoorde along with the First Corps under my own command on the left of the line held by the three British cavalry divisions. Here, too, British cavalry were more than a match for the German cavalry brought against them, their sound training and good shooting proving more than sufficient to counterbalance German superiority in numbers.

"It was on this occasion that the Royal Horse Guards, by bold and rapid movement across the front of two German cavalry regiments too startled to interfere, were able to extricate the 20th Infantry Brigade from Kruiseecke.

"Four days later came the crowning episode of the defence which has for ever associated the Household Brigade with this village of

Zandvoorde in imperishable renown. On the 29th October the Germans brought up six fresh infantry divisions to the assistance of their cavalry, and supported by 260 heavy guns, on October 30th commenced a new attempt to break through the British line.

"On that day the front of the 3rd British Cavalry Division was held by the Household Cavalry Brigade, from right to left covering Zandvoorde, a squadron of the 1st Life Guards, a squadron of the 2nd Life Guards, the machine guns of the Royal Horse Guards, another squadron of the 1st Life Guards and another squadron of the 2nd Life Guards. They were in narrow trenches on the forward slopes before us in full sight of the enemy. Their trenches were soon blown in, and at 8 a.m., after one and a quarter of an hour's bombardment, the whole of the 39th German infantry division and three battalions of Jaegers attacked their shattered position.

"The time had come to slip away, and orders were issued for retirement to the second line; but the greater part of the two squadrons of Life Guards on the left and the Royal Horse Guards machine guns could not get away and were cut off and died to a man, except for a few wounded prisoners. It was a sad, yet glorious day for the Brigade, for though their losses were great, the line held.

"It was not the end of the trials of the Household Cavalry Brigade in front of Ypres, for at Zwarteleen on the 6th November and the next day, near Klein Zillebeke, they restored or held the Allied line; but that heroic fight for the spot on which this monument now rests remains the outstanding incident of a desperate and most gallant struggle, in which British cavalry proved that mounted or on foot they were capable of the highest flights of skill, courage and endurance.

"Our losses in all these actions were most grievous, and to-day we have with us here the wives, mothers and other relations of the gallant heroes whom we are now honouring.

"I extend to them my own deep, personal sympathy. Theirs is the greatest loss of all in the war to bear, but they have this great consolation. They know that by their self-sacrifice, their dear ones helped to maintain our positions in Flanders, and by so doing they saved the Homeland, and preserved our liberty.

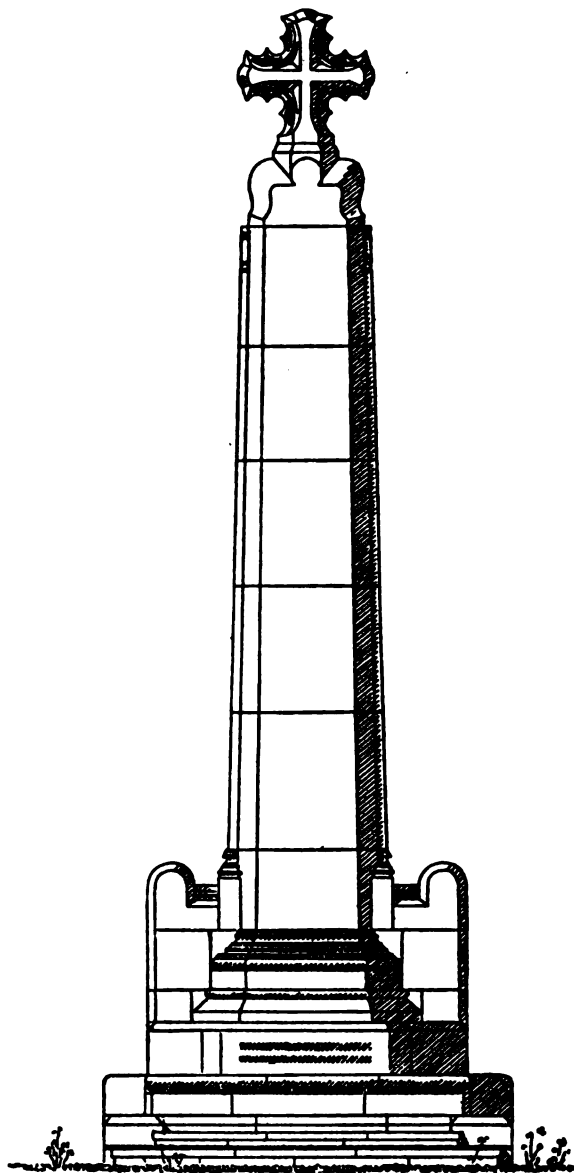
"It is only fitting that the memorial to so much courage and self-sacrifice should be raised here where so many of our dead comrades fell—here in the central scene of their glorious achievements. We are the more grateful to our brave Belgian Allies, who with our French comrades in arms shared with us the peril of those anxious days, for the generous thought and kindly action which has enabled us to set up on Belgian soil this monument to our British dead.

"It will stand henceforth for something more than the story of the Household Cavalry Division; for it will recall to all, Belgian or British or French who look upon it, the time when the best and bravest of our

HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY MEMORIAL 249

French, Belgian and British peoples stood side by side and fought shoulder to shoulder for the same great and noble cause.

"I unveil this Memorial to the gallant officers, non-commissioned officers and men of the Household Cavalry Brigade who gave their lives in the Great War for safety and honour of their country and the liberty of nations."



THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY REQUIEM

On April 2nd, 1919, the doors of Westminster Abbey were thrown open to men and women to whom might be dear the memories of those who had stood to arms in the Household Cavalry and had fallen in the great fight.

At the head of the huge congregation were to be found the King and Queen and the Queen Mother—the King in the service dress of a Field Marshal. Before the Dean and Chapter—vested in black copes—began the brief service of prayer and hymn, the bands of the three Regiments paid their fine tribute with Massenet's *Angelus* and the Eton Memorial March.

Arthur Sullivan's music was always loved in the Regiments; not long before his death the composer had visited their barracks and thanked the "Gentlemen of the Life Guards" for the way they rendered his compositions; now Sullivan's anthem, "Though I walk through the Valley of the Shadow of Death," was well and wisely chosen.

With the dying away of the last note, the Dean, coming to the front of the Sacrament, spoke his address:

"Let us now unite in reverent praise and thanksgiving for our brothers, the Officers, Warrant Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of the Household Cavalry, who in the Great War have laid down their lives for their King and Country. They were men who endured hardships with patience and faced dangers with cheerfulness. They fought valiantly and well. They gave themselves; they gave their all; the promise of their manhood, the flower of their strength. Through them has been won the great victory; through them we stand in the gateway of peace; through them has been obtained the assurance of Freedom. Theirs has been the great sacrifice; and we thank God it has not been made in vain.

"From thanksgiving for their splendid offering, we turn ourselves solemnised, yet, as we pray, inspired for the high responsibility of our simple daily duties. May God so purify our desires and purge us from the selfishness of indolence and pride, that in our country's cause we may show ourselves not unworthy of our dear brothers departed, and with sure hope look forward to our joyful reunion with them hereafter in the higher service of our risen Lord and Saviour."

There followed a few moments of silence—the silence when heart speaks to heart—broken by a note of triumph in one verse of "Praise God from whom all blessings flow." Then before the High Altar was offered the dedication to God's glory of the memory of men who had fought for the cause of humanity, with the humble petition that their souls might rest in peace, that pardon might be granted for all sin and error, and that light perpetual might shine on the spirits of the brave.

Domine dona eis requiem æternam.

Then from high up in the Triforium over the east end, the gold-laced trumpeters, who had passed through the south transept into the ambulatory, sounded the Last Post and the three ringing regimental calls; from the west end of the Abbey Church came the reply of the *Réveille*, and before its echoes had faded, a gathering thunder of drums led up to the crashing of bands and the outburst of choir and people in the National Anthem. The whole occasion lasted but a short half hour; for many years to come there would be many to dwell on every moment of it.

THE GUARDS' MARCH

On March 22nd, 1919, the King directed that the Household Cavalry and Battalions of Guards should march past him at Buckingham Palace, and it was his pleasure that each man should receive his Sovereign's written acknowledgment of the selfless services rendered to himself and his Empire through four years of toil and agony. The text of the message to the Household Cavalry ran: "It is with pride and satisfaction that I take the salute of the three Regiments of my Household Cavalry on the memorable occasion of their triumphal march through London on returning from active service. You have in the Field abroad more than vindicated the high opinion which at my inspection in Windsor Park in 1913 I formed of your discipline and fighting worth. In attack and defence, mounted and dismounted, you have won renown and quickly adapted your ways to new conditions of warfare. Your training and your physique readily met the demands made upon you to provide Household Batteries and Cyclists' Companies, while as Infantry the Household Battalion formed from the three Regiments earned for itself an honoured place among the Infantry of the line.

"In 1918, with characteristic zeal and initiative, the three Regiments responded to the calls for machine-gunners and became the First, Second and Third Guards Machine-Gun Battalions, taking part in the fighting that eventually led to the Armistice.

"As your Colonel-in-Chief, I have followed your fortunes with deepest interest, and in offering you a heartfelt welcome home, I wish to express my gratitude for honourable deeds achieved.

"GEORGE R.I., Colonel-in-Chief."

The procession, which was to perambulate London, was led by the Life Guards and Blues, dismounted, and immediately preceded Lord Cavan in command of the Guards Division, on whose staff rode the Prince of Wales. The route was through Pall Mall, Trafalgar Square, the Strand and Fleet Street, to the Mansion House, with the return by Holborn and Piccadilly to Hyde Park, where the break-off was organised. A Saturday had been fixed to give the people of London a full opportunity of seeing the victorious troops, and bitter winds and threatened snow did nothing to prevent them from mustering in their thousands all along the line to greet the men whose duties at home and duties abroad were for the most part familiar to them. For an hour and a half the khaki stream flowed past the Palace and gave evidence of the volume as well as the quality of the Household Troops. The Household Cavalry, on foot and in drab khaki, with no glitter or glory of accoutrements—to any not present this might sound a dull note. As a matter of fact it proved a stirring sight and was pronounced by the leading journal of the day to be the most impressive thing in a most impressive march—the open order in which the men moved showing off to perfection their physique. The sky was heavy with cloud and the evening was closing in before the Divisional artillery train and the ambulances which brought up the rear of the moving pageant reached their journey's end, but even then the sightseers seemed unwilling to disperse. The spectacle had revived a chain of memories, the sight of massed khaki had called back the sights, and sounds, of other days ; it was all so wonderful, this London pride ; there was all the desire to tell the men what glorious fellows they were, but somehow the words were hard to frame, and through it all many a mother and wife and sister saw all the triumph and all the honour no less clearly because they saw them through a mist of tears.

THE VICTORY MARCH

With the Victory March of the British and Allied Troops through London on the morning of July 19th, 1919, came the close of an epoch. Public rejoicing marked the greatest Victory, the most momentous Peace of all time. Our sailors had kept the mastery of the sea, our soldiers had won the mastery of the land and had ground into powder the accursed system which for half a century had threatened the peace of the world. For this men and women—and little children—had suffered and died, and under all the exuberance there ran through the long summer day the solemn note of pure gratitude to the heroes who had saved their countries and their countrymen, and with them saved the world. And clear above the tumult and the shouting rang the quiet message of the Sovereign—who amid monarchies overset and crumbled empires was enthroned more securely than ever before—to those who had spared nothing, reserved nothing, and shrunk from nothing in serving the greatest cause humanity has known: “To the sick and wounded who cannot take active part in the festival of Victory I send greeting and bid them good cheer, assuring them that the wounds and scars so honourable to themselves inspire in the hearts of their fellow-countrymen the warmest feelings of gratitude and respect.”

Domine, fac saluum Regem nostrum Georgium.

OFFICERS OF THE FIRST LIFE GUARDS WHO SERVED IN THE GREAT WAR

Lieutenant H. Aldridge.	Lieut. and Q.M. S. G. Coggins.
Surgeon-Major E. D. Anderson.	2nd-Lieutenant F. W. Collins.
Major the Hon. J. J. Astor.	Lieutenant-Colonel E. B. Cook,
2nd-Lieutenant H. Atherton.	M.V.O.
2nd-Lieutenant G. G. Barker	Major B. d'A. Corbet.
(21st Lancers).	Surgeon-Major R. M. Cowie,
Lieutenant R. Barr-Smith.	D.S.O.
Major L. E. Barry.	Captain J. de Pret (21st Lancers).
Lieutenant G. N. F. Battle.	2nd-Lieutenant Count J. de Salis.
Temporary Lieutenant J. D. A. L.	Major R. W. G. Dill.
Benthall.	Temporary Lieutenant D. E.
Temporary Lieutenant L. W. K.	Donkin.
Berridge.	Lieutenant G. Drummond.
Captain F. B. F. Bibby.	Lieutenant P. A. Elworthy.
Lieutenant R. C. Bingham.	Lieutenant J. A. G. Emmett.
Lieutenant the Marquis of Bland-	Lieutenant C. R. L. English.
ford.	Lieutenant W. L. Everard.
Lieutenant S. C. Bostock.	Captain the Hon. C. C. Fellowes.
Lieutenant-Colonel E. H. Brassey,	Captain E. Fisher.
M.V.O.	Captain the Hon. E. A. Fitzroy.
Lieutenant C. H. Brassey.	Captain P. W. W. Foster.
Lieutenant Sir Philip Brockle-	Major G. H. H. Freeman.
hurst.	2nd-Lieutenant A. T. Fripp.
2nd-Lieutenant P. Brocklehurst.	2nd - Lieutenant G. L. Gage-
Lieutenant J. Close Brookes.	Brown.
Lieutenant U. H. R. Broughton.	Captain and Quartermaster W.
Lieutenant C. H. A. Brown.	Garton.
Captain the Earl of Caledon.	Lieutenant D. A. A. Geard.
Colonel the Marquis of Cambridge.	Lieutenant F. W. Gentle.
Major Sir Frederick Carden, Bart.	2nd-Lieutenant F. N. Gilbey.
Major Lord John S. Cavendish,	Lieutenant A. R. Gilbey.
D.S.O.	Temporary Lieutenant F. B.
Temporary Lieutenant R. K.	Gillett.
Chiesman.	2nd-Lieutenant K. G. Goland.
Major G. G. F. Chomley.	Captain Goodliffe.
Temporary Lieutenant N. J.	Lieutenant K. Greenwood.
Chrystal.	Captain Lord Hugh Grosvenor.
Captain W. St. G. Clowes.	Lieutenant G. Hallswell.

The Earl of Erroll, B.-Gen. Calley, Colonels Fenwick and Villiers, and Lord Leconfield were among ex-officers who held important commands. Sir M. Crofton served in the 7th Cavalry Brigade and in Africa.

256 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

2nd-Lieutenant R. J. Hamilton.	Temporary Lieutenant C. B. D. Phipps.
Major L. H. Hardy, M.C.	Major A. M. Pirrie (21st Lancers).
Temporary Lieutenant G. C. Hayter-Hames.	Temporary Lieutenant V. P. Pochin.
Major E. Hely.	Lieutenant-Colonel W. R. Portal.
2nd-Lieutenant E. B. Hoare (21st Lancers).	Lieutenant O. S. Portal.
Lieutenant H. Hulton-Harrap.	2nd-Lieutenant E. C. B. Portman.
Lieutenant T. C. Hume.	Lieutenant G. H. Boswell Preston.
Captain A. H. Kearsey.	Captain H. M. Seton-Karr.
Captain E. D. F. Kelly.	Lieutenant A. L. E. Smith, M.C.
Major the Earl of Kilmorey.	Major Lord Somers, D.S.O., M.C.
Lieutenant J. H. Kirkwood.	Captain the Earl of Spencer.
Temporary Lieutenant D. S. Leech.	Captain A. N. F. Spicer.
Captain J. C. G. Leigh.	Lieutenant S. R. F. Spicer.
Lieutenant Sir Richard Levinge.	2nd-Lieutenant H. A. B. St. George.
Captain C. D. Leyland.	Lieutenant-Colonel the Hon. A. F. Stanley, D.S.O.
Captain the Earl of Londesborough.	Major R. Hamilton Stubber.
Captain H. A. P. Matthey.	Captain Sir Richard V. Sutton, Bart., M.C.
Temporary Lieutenant M. McKellow.	Veterinary Captain J. Tagg.
Lieutenant G. Miller (Director of Music).	2nd-Lieutenant L. G. Thynne.
Major G. E. Miller-Mundy.	Lieutenant G. T. Trafford.
Lieutenant the Hon. J. Mitford.	Lieutenant E. L. M. Trafford, M.C.
Major the Hon. G. V. A. Monckton-Arundell, D.S.O., O.B.E.	Lieutenant the Marquis of Tweeddale.
Temporary Lieutenant M. Morisse.	2nd-Lieutenant R. A. Walter.
Lieutenant J. C. Murray.	Lieutenant the Hon. G. Ward, M.V.O.
Temporary Lieutenant G. D. North.	Temporary Lieutenant C. Waterhouse.
Lieutenant T. Nottidge.	2nd-Lieutenant B. H. J. Whittard.
Lieutenant E. D. Ogilvie.	Lieutenant A. W. Wilson.
2nd-Lieutenant M. D. O'Leary.	2nd-Lieutenant G. H. Wilson-Fox.
Temporary Lieutenant H. Orpen.	Captain J. S. Woolley,
2nd-Lieutenant J. B. Orr.	Major the Hon. E. S. Wyndham, D.S.O.
Captain the Earl of Ossory.	Captain the Hon. E. H. Wyndham, M.C.
Temporary Lieutenant C. E. Palmer.	Lieutenant the Hon. W. R. Wyndham.
Lieutenant L. P. Payne-Galway (7th Hussars).	Major and Quartermaster C. Yeatman.
Lieutenant J. H. Peat.	
Lieutenant the Hon. M. H. Pelham.	
Lieutenant H. A. Pelly.	

OFFICERS OF THE SECOND LIFE GUARDS WHO SERVED IN THE GREAT WAR

Lieutenant W. F. Amsden.	Captain Viscount Carlton.
Temporary Lieutenant G. Anderson.	Temporary Lieutenant W. G. Clarke.
Lieutenant J. A. St. C. Anstruther (6th Dragoon Guards).	Captain H. H. Spender Clay, M.C.
Temporary Captain (Honorary Major) J. St. G. P. Armstrong (10th Hussars).	Lieutenant J. G. Clayton.
Lieutenant E. A. Arthur.	Temporary Lieutenant J. H. Coats.
Captain H. C. S. Ashton.	2nd-Lieutenant H. P. Conway (attached).
The Earl of Athlone, G.C.B.	Lieutenant B. L. Coombe.
Temporary Lieutenant H. H. Atterbury.	Major Sir M. G. Crofton, Bart.
Temporary Captain R. W. Barclay.	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant J. L. Cunningham.
Lieutenant R. N. Barran.	Captain W. W. S. Cunninghame.
Veterinary Major E. P. Barry.	Lieutenant G. A. Humphreys-Davies.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant R. Bartholemew.	Captain D. H. Davy.
Captain the Hon. W. H. C. Beaumont.	Major the Hon. H. Dawnay, D.S.O.
Captain Lord Belper.	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant A. W. S. Dean.
Lieutenant R. W. Beresford-Pierse.	Captain W. O. Upton-Cottrill Dormer (3rd Reserve Cavalry).
Captain W. A. V. Bethell.	Temporary Lieutenant C. R. Dormer.
Captain D. J. N. Blair.	Lieutenant A. V. Drummond.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant F. d'A. Blofield.	Lieutenant Sir R. G. V. Duff.
Captain the Hon. M. Bowes-Lyon.	Lieutenant H. L. Farquhar.
Captain J. Bray.	Lieutenant-Colonel A. F. H. Ferguson.
Temporary 2nd - Lieutenant Bridges.	2nd-Lieutenant V. J. Ferguson.
Major J. C. Brinton, M.V.O., D.S.O.	Lieutenant G. A. Fillingham (Tank Corps).
Temporary Lieutenant the Hon. C. N. Bruce.	2nd-Lieutenant P. G. Fleming.
Temporary Lieutenant E. W. Butler.	Lieutenant A. W. Gale.
Lieutenant H. C. Bygott (Scots Guards).	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant C. T. Garland.
Captain C. R. Campbell.	Captain M. W. A. P. Graham.
	Temporary Lieutenant A. P. Graves.
	Temporary Lieutenant F. N. Griffin (attached).

258 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

Temporary Lieutenant C. E. Gunther.	Temporary Lieutenant J. L. Lysaght (attached).
Temporary Lieutenant R. J. Gunther.	2nd-Lieutenant H. D. R. Margesson (11th Hussars).
Major T. C. Gurney.	2nd-Lieutenant E. K. Marsland.
Temporary Lieutenant F. R. Haggie (attached).	Temporary Lieutenant W. S. Matterson.
Honorary 2nd-Lieutenant Prince Said Halim.	2nd-Lieutenant E. J. W. Matthews.
Major C. W. H. Hall, M.V.O. (Director of Music).	Lieutenant H. J. H. McClintock.
Major the Hon. R. G. A. Hamilton (Essex R.H.A.).	Captain S. G. Menzies, D.S.O.
Major S. T. Hankey.	Lieutenant K. G. Menzies.
Lieutenant J. B. Harrison.	Major Lord Montgomerie.
Temporary Lieutenant W. P. Harrison.	Captain V. R. Montgomerie.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant H. C. F. Hawthorn.	Temporary Lieutenant J. Moorsom.
Captain and Quartermaster H. Hidden.	Lieutenant O. Mowatt (10th Hussars).
Captain J. H. Hind (13th Hussars).	Lieutenant J. Nethersole (25th Cavalry).
Lieutenant A. S. Hoare.	2nd-Lieutenant C. Nicholson.
Lieutenant F. D. Hobbs.	Captain J. A. O'Driscoll (Royal Army Medical Corps).
Lieutenant A. C. Hobson.	Captain the Hon. A. O'Neill.
2nd-Lieutenant L. P. Howse.	2nd-Lieutenant K. R. Palmer.
Lieutenant J. C. Humfrey (6th Dragoons).	Lieutenant R. G. Fenwick Palmer.
Lieutenant G. C. Jackson.	2nd-Lieutenant H. C. T. Parker (5th Reserve Cavalry).
Lieutenant T. S. Jobson (27th Light Cavalry).	2nd-Lieutenant V. A. L. Paton.
Major the Hon. H. E. Joicey (14th Hussars).	Lieutenant J. S. Pendarves.
Lieutenant D. H. Blew Jones.	Captain F. P. C. Pemberton.
2nd-Lieutenant J. G. Kevan.	Major F. Penn, M.C.
Lieutenant E. J. King-King (13th Reserve Cavalry).	Lieutenant A. B. Perkins.
Temporary Lieutenant A. Stuart Little (attached).	2nd-Lieutenant W. S. Peterson.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant J. A. Lovell.	Lieutenant T. Philipson.
Surgeon-Captain E. J. H. Luxmoore, M.C.	Surgeon Lieutenant-Colonel J. H. Power.
Captain J. D. Lyons (13th Hussars).	Captain Sir G. Prescott, Bart.
	2nd-Lieutenant C. W. B. Prescott (Interpreter).
	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant R. J. Pym.
	2nd-Lieutenant A. C. Radcliffe.

Temporary Lieutenant H. M. Read.	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant G. W. Thurston.
Captain K. Robertson (2nd Lancers).	2nd-Lieutenant R. Tindall.
Lieutenant L. Robinson.	Captain J. F. Todd (39th Central India Horse).
Lieutenant L. K. Robinson.	Major T. G. J. Torrie (27th Light Cavalry).
Captain N. S. Rouse (5th Russian Cavalry Regiment).	Captain A. M. Vandeleur.
2nd-Lieutenant T. S. Sanderson (12th Lancers).	Lieutenant R. C. G. Vivian.
Lieutenant V. H. Sandford.	Veterinary Captain J. B. Walker (Royal Army Veterinary Corps).
Lieutenant C. J. Sandys.	Temporary Lieutenant R. H. Walker.
2nd-Lieutenant D. F. Scott (Scots Guards).	Captain D. E. Wallace.
2nd-Lieutenant J. L. Shard.	Temporary Lieutenant G. V. Wallop.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant C. W. C. Shelley.	Lieutenant E. G. Warner.
2nd-Lieutenant S. G. Simpson (Interpreter).	Temporary Lieutenant J. N. Williamson.
Captain Sir A. H. M. Sinclair, Bart.	Lieutenant J. M. Wilson.
Temporary Lieutenant J. Smith.	Temporary Lieutenant G. C. Wilson.
Lieutenant A. G. Murray Smith.	Temporary 2nd Lieutenant E. W. Wilson.
Captain E. J. L. Speed.	2nd-Lieutenant C. A. F. Wingfield (13th Hussars).
Lieutenant R. S. Stancliffe.	Lieutenant E. W. H. Wood.
Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. A. F. Stanley, D.S.O.	Temporary Lieutenant G. L. Wright.
Captain H. S. B. Surtees.	
Temporary Lieutenant H. J. Thomas.	

OFFICERS WHO SERVED IN THE ROYAL HORSE GUARDS DURING THE GREAT WAR

Lieutenant C. H. A. the Marquis of Anglesey.	Captain G. V. S. Bowlby.
2nd-Lieutenant J. L. P. Back.	Captain H. E. Brassey.
Lieutenant Sir A. Bagot.	Captain E. P. Brassey.
2nd-Lieutenant R. E. Bion.	2nd-Lieutenant W. L. Breeze.
2nd-Lieutenant A. L. Birch.	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant H. J. Buckmaster.
2nd-Lieutenant H. Bjorkman.	2nd-Lieutenant G. Calderon.
Surgeon-Captain P. J. Bodington.	2nd-Lieutenant A. Campbell.
2nd-Lieutenant G. H. Bodington.	Lieutenant V. Chaplin.

260 STORY OF THE HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY

Lieutenant D. B. Chapple.	2nd Lieutenant G. C. Halliwell.
Captain A. V. the Earl of Clan-	2nd-Lieutenant W. S. Hann.
william.	Captain E. P. L. Hare.
2nd-Lieutenant the Hon. A. Coke.	Lieutenant and Quartermaster
Temporary Lieutenant J. T. Col-	C. E. Harford.
ledge.	2nd-Lieutenant L. Harrington.
Lieutenant H. C. S. Combe.	Captain J. F. Harrison.
2nd-Lieutenant Lord S. D. Comp-	Lieutenant P. V. Heath.
ton.	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant R. E.
Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant J.	Henderson.
Coogan.	Temporary Lieutenant H. L. Q.
Major Viscount Crichton, M.V.O.,	Henriques.
D.S.O.	Lieutenant S. Herbert.
Temporary Lieutenant H. P.	2nd-Lieutenant M. G. Herbert.
Cross.	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant J. A.
Temporary Lieutenant (Acting	Herbert.
Captain) F. R. Dakeyne.	2nd-Lieutenant L. P. Hewitt.
Lieutenant T. G. Davson.	Temporary Lieutenant C. G.
Temporary Lieutenant E. A. Dodd.	Hoare.
2nd-Lieutenant J. D. Deane	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant J. U.
Drummond.	Hogarth.
2nd-Lieutenant R. H. Duncombe.	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant E. R.
2nd-Lieutenant B. H. Easter.	How.
2nd-Lieutenant S. I. Fairbairn.	Temporary Lieutenant the Hon.
2nd-Lieutenant S. D. Falcke.	J. K. E. Howard.
Temporary Lieutenant E. J.	Lieutenant G. F. Hughes.
Feary.	Lieutenant J. L. McK. Hutchin-
Lieutenant K. R. G. Fenwick.	son.
Lieutenant R. Fernie.	Captain Lord A. R. Innes-Ker.
Captain J. P. G. M. Fitzgerald.	Lieutenant A. J. Ison.
Temporary Lieutenant H. J. Ford-	2nd-Lieutenant R. B. James.
ham.	Lieutenant R. L. H. Jolliffe.
2nd-Lieutenant the Hon. C. G. W.	2nd-Lieutenant G. P. Jones.
Weld Forester.	Temporary Lieutenant E. N.
Captain A. W. Foster.	Kemsley.
Captain F. J. Lord Gerard.	2nd-Lieutenant C. Kerr.
2nd-Lieutenant O. H. Gilbey.	Lieutenant and Quartermaster
2nd-Lieutenant S. A. Gollan.	S. P. Keyworth.
Lieutenant Lord A. St. C. Suther-	2nd-Lieutenant F. B. de Klee.
land Leveson Gower.	2nd-Lieutenant the Hon. F. Lamb-
Lieutenant O. E. W. Greaves.	ton.
2nd-Lieutenant G. M. Greaves.	Lieutenant G. V. Naylor Ley-
2nd-Lieutenant L. Griesley.	land.
2nd-Lieutenant Baron de Guns-	Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant F. N.
berg.	Lloyd.

- Major C. S. H. the Marquis of Londonderry, M.V.O.
 2nd-Lieutenant A. W. W. Lyon.
 Captain J. D. Lyons.
 Lieutenant A. A. Mackintosh.
 Captain G. L. T. G. Meyrick.
 2nd-Lieutenant Sir L. J. Milburn.
 2nd-Lieutenant V. H. Miller.
 Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant E. W. Mitchell.
 Captain the Hon. R. F. Molyneux, M.V.O.
 2nd-Lieutenant H. W. O. Viscount Molyneux.
 2nd-Lieutenant M. H. Moreland.
 Temporary Lieutenant H. T. Morton.
 Temporary Lieutenant the Hon. E. R. L. Mostyn.
 2nd-Lieutenant H. G. Nangle.
 Captain W. L. Naper.
 Captain the Marquis of Northampton.
 2nd-Lieutenant H. N. Nowell.
 Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant J. A. C. Otts.
 2nd-Lieutenant L. G. Paget.
 Lieutenant Lord V. W. Paget.
 Veterinary Major W. A. Pallin.
 Captain A. P. Palmer, D.S.O.
 Surgeon-Major B. Pares.
 Temporary Lieutenant T. R. Pearson.
 Captain R. the Earl of Pembroke and Montgomery, M.V.O.
 2nd-Lieutenant A. Pharo.
 Lieutenant the Hon. C. E. A. Phillips.
 Temporary Lieutenant H. C. Pilkington.
 2nd-Lieutenant R. St. L. Portal.
 2nd-Lieutenant A. T. Powlett.
 2nd-Lieutenant L. S. Ward Price.
 2nd-Lieutenant G. H. Pullin.
 2nd-Lieutenant R. Hutton Riddell.
 Temporary Lieutenant V. Routledge.
 Lieutenant G. R. F. Rowley.
 Lieutenant the Duke of Roxburghe, K.T., M.V.O.
 2nd-Lieutenant R. L. Sale.
 2nd-Lieutenant M. A. Sands.
 Lieutenant K. G. W. Shennan.
 2nd-Lieutenant J. E. Murray Smith.
 Veterinary Lieutenant R. T. Smith.
 2nd-Lieutenant F. E. S. Lord St. Leonards.
 2nd - Lieutenant A. W. W. Stanley.
 2nd-Lieutenant G. Stirling.
 Lieutenant G. Sweeting.
 Captain the Hon. E. R. Thesiger.
 2nd-Lieutenant the Marquis of Titchfield.
 Temporary 2nd-Lieutenant R. Tottie.
 Lieutenant H. Tozer.
 2nd-Lieutenant D. R. Trefusis.
 Lieutenant A. C. Turnor.
 Major Lord Tweedmouth, M.V.O., D.S.O.
 Temporary Lieutenant G. A. Viviers.
 Major R. G. H. Howard Vyse.
 Lieutenant M. J. Wemyss.
 2nd-Lieutenant Viscount Wendoover.
 2nd-Lieutenant R. H. L. Whitelaw.
 2nd-Lieutenant A. T. Wilson.
 Lieutenant-Colonel G. C. Wilson, M.V.O.
 Captain H. H. Wilson, D.S.O.
 2nd-Lieutenant R. W. Wilson.
 Lieutenant C. S. Lord Worsley.

INDEX

A.

ABBEVILLE, 198
 Abbeville manœuvres, 154
 Agadir incident, 10
Ailesbury Memoirs, quoted, 18 *n.*
 Aisne, Battle of the, 62 *et seq.*, 78, 86, 247
 Aix-la-Chapelle, 93
 Alexandra, Queen, farewell to Royal Horse Guards' squadron, 31; at Requiem, 250
 Allenby, Field-Marshal Viscount, tribute to Household Cavalry in the War, ix-x; in command of Cavalry Division, B.E.F., 37, 39 *n.*, 40, 44, 46, 62, 69, 70, 79, 105, 123 *n.*; duties during retreat from Mons, 49, 55; on the Marne, 57, 58, 60, 61; movement North, 69; at Ypres, 71, 72; at Kruseecke, 98 *et seq.*; at Battle of Arras, 163; leaves for the East, 175
 Alston, General, 84 *n.*
 Ames, Major, 79
 Anne, Queen, funeral of, 21
 Antwerp, siege and fall of, 38, 69, 83 *et seq.*
 Armistice, the, 218 *et seq.*
 Arnim, General, on British infantry, 156
 Arras, Battle of, 163 *et seq.*, 183, 184
 Arras front, expectation of German push on (1918), 207 *et seq.*
 Artillery, reorganisation of, 151-152; German and French, 152
 Artres, 42
 Ashton's Squadron, 89, 91, 92
 Asquith, Mr. H. H. (Earl of Oxford and Asquith), 33
 Astor, Major, 67, 73 *n.*; siege battery by, 201
 Astoria Hotel, Paris, 61 *n.*

B.

BADGES, worn by Household Cavalry, 17, 211
 Bailleul, 73, 107

Baiseux, 39
 Balmoral, 2
 Bapaume, 185; Bapaume Ridge, allies advance over, 162
 Beaumont, 43, 44
 Beaurepaire, 60
 Beauvais, 44
 Belgium, violation of neutrality, 41
 Belper's, Lord, Squadron, 89, 91, 92
 Bethancourt, 48
 Bethell, Lieut., diary quoted, 46
 Bessler, General von, 86
 Bingham, General Hon. C. E., in command of Fourth Cavalry Brigade, 37, 42, 43, 45, 49, 52, 57 *et seq.*, 64, 66, 69, 70, 74, 77, 104, 247
 Birkenhead, Earl of, letter from, quoted, 50 *n.*
 Blenzy, 69
 Blues, the, *see* Royal Horse Guards.
 Boer War, 2; distribution of medals for, 9; Household Cavalry in, 20
 Bowlby, Capt. G. V. S., 75 *et seq.*, 113; death of, 129, 132, 133
 Braisne, 63
 Brassey, Colonel E. H., 24-25, 96, 97, 100, 105, 109; letter of protest against dropping "Reserve" from title of Household Reserve Regiments, 203-205; contributes to capture of Monchy, 209-210; Brigade commanded by, 213 *n.*, 215
 Brigade Major, selection of, 80
 Briggs, General Sir C., 42, 63, 123 *n.*
 British Expeditionary Force, *see* Expeditionary Force.
 British infantry, tribute to new, 156
 Broughton, Henry, drawings belonging to, viii
 Broughton, Huttleston, drawings belonging to, vii
 Brussels, German entry into, 38
 Buckingham Palace, 3
 Buckmaster, Captain, extract from diary of, 167
 Bülow, General von, 57
 Bulfin, General, 117

Bulkeley-Johnson, Brig.-General, 114; death of, 166, 168
 Byng, Hon. Julian (Viscount Byng of Vimy), 64, 78, 84 *n.*, 85, 92, 94, 95, 98, 101, 104, 114, 121, 123 *n.*

C.

CALAIS Conference, 170
 Calley, Brig.-General, 255
 Cambrai, Battle of, 188 *et seq.*, 213
 Canadian Brigade, 189, 190; divisions at Monchy, 209, 210
 Capper, General, 78, 84 *n.*, 94, 98, 100
 Carlton, Lord, Earl of Wharnccliffe, extract from, diary of, 215 *n.*
 Castelnau, General, 68, 70 *n.*
 Cavalry, in the Battle of the Aisne, 65; at Ypres, 70 *et seq.*; proposals for reduction of, 160-61, 193 *et seq.*
 Cavalry Brigade, Fourth, composition of, 37
 Cavalry Corps, at Battle of Ypres, 70-71; reorganisation of and enlistment for, 142 *et seq.*
 Cavalry Division, 37, 39; in retreat from Mons, 42 *et seq.*
 Cavan, Earl of, at Klein Zillebeke, 107 *et seq.*, 111, 112, 117-118; Divisional commander of Guards' Division, 143 *et seq.*; in the Guards' March, 253
 Cavendish, Lord John, 52, 58; death of, 72, 73 *n.*
 Cazalet, Captain, 179-180
 Channel ports, threat to, 93
 Charles II., death of, 20
 Chemin des Dames, 64
 Chetwode, Sir Philip, 37, 40
 Coldstream Guards, 19
 Combe, Captain, 64
 Commune Canal, 71, 105, 107
 Compiègne, 49
 Conneau, 61
 Cook, Lt.-Colonel E. B., at review of Household Cavalry, 1913...27; in command of Household Cavalry Regiment, B.E.F., 31, 42, 45, 52, 55, 59, 64, 65, 69, 70; diary of, quoted, 42 *n.*, 72; death of, 73
 Cookson, Major, 11
 Corbet, Major B., 143
 Courgies, 42
 Cowie, Surgeon-Major, 38 *n.*

Cressy, 48
 Crichton, Viscount, 31; takes command of Household Cavalry Regiment, 73, 75, 76; letter to Col. Fitzgerald quoted, 73 *n.*; death of, 76, 77
 Crofton, Sir Morgan, 255
 Cumberland, Duke of, 16
 Cunningham, Major, 181
 Currie, General, 210
 Cyclists' company formed, training and use, 145-146

D.

DAWNAY, Major the Hon. H., 31-32, 69, 96; death of, 110, 111, 118, 120
 De Gunsberg, Alexis, death of, 109
 Delhi, George V. at, 25
 De Lisle, General Sir B., 37, 42, 70, 72, 104, 105
 D'Esperey, General Franchet, 53, 56
 Dives, 48
 Dragoons, in the Household Cavalry Brigade, 80 *et seq.*
 Dress, officers', 8-9
 Duff, Sir Robin, death of, 89
 "Duke of France," The, 158
 Dundonald, Earl of, 4, 26
 Dunkirk, conference at, 105-106
 De Ros, Lord, 4 *n.*
 D'Urtal, General, 88

E.

EDWARD of Saxe-Weimar, Prince, 4 *n.*
 Edward VII., coronation of, 1; influence on foreign policy, 1-2; use of "Trooper" by, 9; at Cambridge for manœuvres, 1912, 11; interest in Household Cavalry, 13; death and funeral of, 13 *et seq.*, 23 *n.*; Indian visit of, 25
 Elouges, 39, 42, 247
 Engineers' strike, 1911, 11
 Entente Cordiale, the, 1-2, 34
 Erroll, Earl of, 255
 Escorts, duties and composition of, 6 *et seq.*
 Esher, Lord, 6
 Essex Yeomanry, 114, 120, 126, 166, 168, 169
 Etaples, Household Cavalry at, for machine gun training, 199 *et seq.*; air raid, 201-202

Expeditionary Force, formed, 12, 29, 31; reception and concentration in France, 33 *et seq.*, 78; concentration completed, and disposition of, 38 *et seq.*; retreat from Mons, 41 *et seq.*; Battle of the Marne, 54 *et seq.*; Battle of the Aisne, 62; general disposition of on October 22nd, 1914, 95-96; after first Battle of Ypres, 116; growth of, 128, 136; organisation into corps, 145

F.

FABECK, General, attack on Zandvoorde, 101
 Fampoux, capture of, 165, 173
 Fenwick, Colonel, 255
 Ferdinand, Archduke, murder of, 28
 Ferguson, Lt.-Colonel A. F. H., 79, 91, 92, 96; diary of quoted, 87 *n.*, 121, 122 *n.*
 Ferguson, Lt.-General Sir Charles, farewell message to Household Battalion, 183
 Ferguson, John, death of, 209
 Ferme la Buissant, 53
 Feversham, Earl of, 20
 Fitzgerald, Colonel, 79
 Fitzroy, Captain Hon. E. A., 144
 Flying Corps, first reconnaissance of, 38
 Foch, Marshal, 114, 121; quoted, 1 *n.*; at 1912 manœuvres, 11-12; at Battle of the Marne, 56, 57; policy of attack, 105; at Dunkirk Conference, 106; assault on Vimy Ridge, 137; confidence and counter offensive of, 206, 207; terms of Armistice dictated by, 218
 Fortescue, the Hon. Sir John, *precis* of Regimental records in *Times* supplement, 146 *et seq.*
 Fourchest, 52
 France, Edward VII. and, 1-2
 Francis of Teck, Prince, funeral of, 14 *n.*
 French, Sir John (Earl of Ypres), C.-in-C., Expeditionary Force, 29, 33, 38, 40; report on retirement from Mons, 43; at Noyon, 45; plans of, for retreat of B.E.F., 49-50; order to B.E.F. on the Marne, 55-56; note on Marne successes, 57 *n.*; plans for Battle of Marne, 59 *et seq.*; on the

Aisne, 63, 65, 66; plans for transfer of troops, 68-69; at St. Omer, 70 and *n.*; confidence of, 74, 95 and *n.*; and Rawlinson, 86, 87; orders for British offensive, 88; at Bailleul, 107; plans for attack on Neuve Chapelle, 121; end of leadership in the field, 150
 Funerals, Royal, 16, 18 *et seq.*

G.

GALLIEN, General, 56
 George I., death of, 21
 George II., death, lying in state and funeral, 21-22
 George III., lying-in-state and funeral of, 16, 18, 22
 George IV., funeral of, 16, 18, 23; coronation of, 20
 George V., King, dedication of *Household Cavalry* to, vi, vii; as Colonel-in-Chief of Household Cavalry, vii; portrait of, vii; visit to India, 1911...25; coronation of, 24-25; review of Household Cavalry, 1913...26-27, 252; accident to, in France, 144; letter to Lord Grenfell, regarding Fortescue's *Times* article, 149; approval for formation Household Battalion, 171-172; farewell order to Household Battalion, 182; visit to the troops, 208; message to the Army at the Armistice, 219; at Household Cavalry Requiem, 250; message on occasion of Victory March, 254
 German Army, advantages lying with, 41-42
 German troops, cruelty of, 102, 103
 Germany, "peaceful penetration of, 1-2
 Gentlemen-at-Arms, 16, 22
 Gheluvelt, 106; bravery of Worcesters at, 104, 117, 118
 Gold Stick-in-Waiting, duties, functions and privileges of, 3 *et seq.*; 15, 17, 18, 20
 Gough, General Sir H., 37, 40, 42, 45, 55, 57, 70, 71, 74, 75, 98, 104, 105, 180 *n.*, 192, 247
 Gournay-sur-Marne, 52
 Grand Morin, crossing of, 56 *et seq.*
 Great War, ultimatum and opening movements, 28; first shot in, 39

Greaves, Oswain, 89 *n.*
 Grenadier Guards, 14, 15, 23 *n.*
 Grenfell, Lord, 4 *n.*, 26; letter to K. George V. protesting against slight by Fortescue to Household Cavalry, 147-148
 Grierson, General Sir J., 11; death of, 12
 Grosvenor's Squadron, annihilation of, 102
 "Guard," title of, 19
 Guards, the, march through London, 252-253
 Guards, Brigade of, functions of, 16; at Royal Funerals, 23
 Guards Division, formation of, 143; Divisional Squadron in France, 143 *et seq.*; Cyclists Company formed, 145-146
 Guards Machine Gun Regiment, Roll of Honour, 243-246
 Guards, Mounting of, Orders regarding the, 3-4
 Gurney, Lt.-Colonel, 31, 42, 48, 49, 58, 61, 67, 113
 Guthrie, Sir William, portrait of Earl Haig, by, vii

H.

HAIG, F. M. Earl, portrait of, vii; at 1912 Manœuvres, 11; in 1918, 55; at Braine, 69; at Poelcappelle, 94; at Ypres, 104, 105; tribute to 7th Cavalry Brigade, 111; Klein Zillebeke, 118; attack on Loos, 137 *et seq.*; appointed C.-in-C. on Western front, 150; conference with Joffre, 150-151; and the Cavalry, 160-161; Battle of Arras, 163, and plans for capture of, 170; tribute to Cavalry Corps, 186-187; plans for seizure of Cambrai, 188; letter to Kavanagh on dismounting Household Cavalry, 196; under orders of Foch, 207; protest against alteration of pay, badge and title of Household Cavalry, 211-212; unveiling of Household Cavalry Memorial at Zandvoorde, 246 *et seq.*
 Haking, General, 137
 Haldane, Viscount, mobilisation scheme of, 29, 78
 Halsbury, Earl, judgment on Household Cavalry's petition, 24
 Halte, 70

Hamburger Nachrichten, quoted, 28, 29
 Hamill, Corporal-of-Horse, 176-177
 Haukey, Lt.-Colonel, 79
 Harleian M.SS., quoted, 21
 Harveng, 39
 Havrincourt, 46
 Hazebrouck, 70, 114, 123
 Heath, Lieut. P. V., 47; death of, 51-52
 Henry VII., 16
 Henry VIII., 16
 Hill 60...110, 123
 Hill 70...138 *et seq.*
 Hills, Corporal of Horse, viii
 Hindenburg, attack by, 55
 Hindenburg line, 162, 170, 188, 214, 215
 Holford, Colonel Sir George, 79, 147, 171
 Homblieies, 45
 Hooze, Chateau of, 136
 Horne, General Sir Henry, 163
 "Household," application of term, 16
 Household Cavalry, in the Great War, Viscount Allenby's tribute to, ix-x; at coronation of Edward VII., 1; increase of duties on Edward VII.'s accession, 2 *et seq.*; revision of Standing Orders for, 4 *et seq.*; use of term "trooper" in, 9-10; incident at manœuvres 1909...10; khaki first worn by, 12; at funeral and lying-in-state of Edward VII., 13; petition regarding duties and privileges of, 15 *et seq.*, 24; at Royal funerals, 16, 18 *et seq.*; Household duties of 20; at Coronation of King George V., 24-25; reviews of, at Windsor by Queen Victoria, 26, and King George V., 26-27
 Composite Regiment formed for B.E.F., 31 *et seq.*; popularity among the French, 33, 35-36; joins 4th Cavalry Brigade, 37; interpreters for, 38; in the retreat from Mons, 41 *et seq.*, 46 *et seq.*; in Smith-Dorrien's action, 44 *et seq.*; first casualties, 50 *et seq.*; on the Marne, 55, 57; the passage of Petit Morin, 59; Battle of the Aisne, 63, 64; at Paissy, 65 *et seq.*; with Haig, 69; in the movement north, 70 *et seq.*; casualties, 72; Crichton

takes command, 73 ; at Messines, 74 *et seq.* ; merged into Household Cavalry Brigade, 77, 112-113 ; Brigade formed, 70, 79 *et seq.* ; embarkation and landing, 84-85 ; at Bruges, 86-87 ; at Ypres, 88 *et seq.* ; first experience of entrenching, 93 ; thanked by Gen. Lawford, 95 ; casualties in trenches, 97-98 ; at Kruiseecke, 98 *et seq.*, 247 ; at Zandvoorde, 100 *et seq.*, 246 *et seq.* ; on the Commine Canal, 106 *et seq.* ; at Klein Zillebeke, 108 *et seq.*, 117-118, 246 ; meet the Prussian Guards, 112 ; break up of, 113-114 ; at Hazebrouck, 114 ; inspection by Sir J. French, 120 ; at Neuve Chapelle, 121-122 ; in 2nd B. of Ypres, 123 *et seq.* ; at the B. of Loos, 137 *et seq.* ; in winter billets 1915...141 ; enlistment for and disposition of reserves, 143 ; slight to, by Fortescue in *Times* supplement, 146 *et seq.* ; Machine Gun Squadrons of, 152-153 ; "Abbeville Manceuvres" of, 154 ; at Bonnavay and the B. of Somme, 155 *et seq.* ; pioneer work of, 161 ; at B. of Arras, 164 *et seq.* ; Household Battalion, formation, 171 ; on the Somme, 172, 183 ; at B. of Arras, 173, 183 ; attack on Rœux, 174 *et seq.*, 183 ; drain on reserves, 176 ; on the Arras front, 176-177 ; attack on Requette Farm, 178 *et seq.*, 184 ; disbandment of, 181, *et seq.* ; in the Epehy district, 186 ; Machine Gun Squadrons of, 187 ; in B. of Cambrai, 190, 191 ; Conversion into Machine Gun Battalions, 191, 193 *et seq.* ; transfers to Tank Corps, 193 ; at Abbeville, 1918, 198 ; machine gun training at Etaples, 199 *et seq.* ; Air raid on, 201-202 ; Versatility of, 200-201 ; siege battery of, 201 ; Colonel Brassey's protest regarding dropping of "Reserve" from title of Reserve Regts., 204 - 205 ; attempts to lower pay and alter status of, 210 *et seq.* ; Household Machine Gun Brigade, 213 *n.* ; Lindsay's (Brassey's) Force formed, 213, at Bray, 214 ; in

the advance on St. Quentin, 215 ; at Le Catelet, 216 ; Roll of Honour, 225-246 ; Unveiling of Memorial to, at Zandvoorde, by Earl Haig, 246-249 ; Requiem at Westminster Abbey, April, 1919...250-251 ; in the Guard's March through London, 252-253 ; *See also under* Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards.
 Houthem, 98
 Howard, Captain, on the Household Cavalry as Machine Gunners, 199-200
 Howe, Earl, 4 *n.*
 Humbert, General, 198
 Hussars, in the Household Cavalry Brigade, 80 *et seq.*

I.

INNES-KER, Lt.-Colonel, Lord A., 99, 130, 131
 Ireland, Queen Victoria's visit to, 2 ; in 1914...28
 "Iron" Division, 155, 157
 Italy, two Divisions despatched to, 188

J.

JAMES II., coronation of, 18 ; at Mass, 20
 Jeulam, 42
 Joffre, Marshal, 33, 70 *n.*, 83 ; projected Ardenne movement, 40 ; plans for disposition of B.E.F., 50, 53 *n.* ; plans for stand on Marne, 54, 57, 59, 61-62 ; approval of British move to Flanders, 69 ; telegram to Kitchener, 85 ; at Dunkirk Conference, 105-106 ; plans for Spring 1915...121 ; and Haig, 150-151, 170
 Jupp, Trooper, 51 *n.*

K.

KAVANAGH, General Sir C., in command of Household Cavalry Brigade, 80, 95, 100 *et seq.*, 108, 109, 118 ; tribute to Royal Horse Guards, 113 *n.* ; in Command of 2nd Cavalry Division, 122 ; at B. of Cambrai, 189 ; letter from, on dismounting of Household Cavalry, 196-197

Kemmel, 70
 Kennedy, Brig.-General, 122
 Khaki, first used by Household Cavalry, 12
 Kirkwood, Major, 175
 Kitchener, F. M. Earl, Foch on, 1 *n.* ; at Coronation of George V., 24 ; as War Secretary, plans, etc., 33, 50, 53 *n.*, 68 ; regarding Antwerp, 83 *et seq.* ; estimated duration of the War, 106 ; plans for development of Army, 119, 151-152, 188 ; advice to Haig, 150
 Klein Zillebeke, Household Cavalry at, 97, 101, 107 *et seq.*, 246, 248
 Klück, General von, defeat on the Marne, 56 *et seq.*, 60 *et seq.*
 Kruseecke, 98 *et seq.*, 247

L.

" L " BATTERY, gallantry of, 50-51
 La Croix, 61
 La Ferté, 57
 Lahore Division, 74
 Lambton, Hon. F., 89 *n.* ; death of, 103
 Lancers, in the Household Cavalry Brigade, 80 *et seq.*
 Lawford, General, 93, 95, 101, 103, 112
 Lebel rifle, 152
 Le Cateau, 37, 43, 216
 Le Catelet, 44
 Leconfield, Lord, 255
 Ledringhem, 145
 Lee, Colonel Vaughan, 15
 Le Minet, 46, 48
 Lens, 137, 138
 Leveson-Gower, Lord Alastair, 127-128
 Life Guards, and Engineers' Strike, 1911...11 ; foundation and functions of, 16, 17 ; distinction from other Guards, 19 ; mounting of, 19-20 ; at Zandvoorde, 100, 101 ; at Kruseecke, 98 ; constitution of home force during the War, 115 *n.* ; Band of in France, 160 ; at Neuf Berquin, 188 ; advance to Lille, 217-218 ; First Regiment, in Mons retreat, 52-53 ; discipline of, 82 ; Battle of Ypres, 92, 93, 95, 97 ; Roll of Officers who embarked for France Oct. 6th, 1914...82-84 ; at Hollebeke, 105 ; at Zwarteele, 109-110 ; 2nd B. of Ypres, 124-

125, losses, 129, and War Diary of, 134-135 ; air raid on at Etaples, 201-202 ; join First Army, 203 ; visit of King to, 208 ; capture of Monchy, 209-210 ; Roll of Honour, 1914-1918...221-226 ; Officers who served in the War, 255-256
 Second Regiment, 46, 48 ; work of in Mons retreat, 48 *et seq.* ; B. of Marne, 58 ; 1st B. of Ypres, 90, 95 ; Roll of Officers who embarked for France, Oct. 6th, 1914...82a-82b ; in 2nd B. of Ypres, 125, 127, losses, 129 ; at Corbie, 157 ; join Fourth Corps, 203 ; on the Albert front, 208 ; in attack on Hindenburg line, 215 ; Roll of Honour, 1914-1918...226-232 ; Officers who served in the War, 257-259

Ligny, 44
 Lille, 88
 Lincoln Regiment, 76, 77
 Lindsay, Colonel G. M., 213, 214
 Lomax, General, 111
 London Scottish, 104 ; first appearance of, 74
 Longueval, British charge at, 157
 Loos, Battle of, 137 *et seq.*, 144, 151
 Loupeigne, 62
 Lowman, Corporal, extract from diary of, 140 *n.*
 Ludendorff, attack on Rheims, 206
 Lynde, 120

M.

MACHINE Gun, value of, 194
 Machine Gun Cavalry Sections, brigading of, 152-153
 Machine Gun Corps, 203 *n.*
 Machine Gun Squadrons of Household Cavalry, 187
 " Magnæ Britannica Notitia " (Chamberleyne), cited, 19
 Makins, General, 78, 97, 100, 103
 Manœuvres, 1909, unfortunate incident at, 10 ; 1913, 12
 Marker, Major, 15
 Marne, Battle of, ix, 55 *et seq.*, 247
 Mary, Princess, 31 *n.*
 Mary, Queen-Consort, coronation of, 24-25 ; farewell to L. G. and R. H. G. Squadrons, 31 ; at Requiem, 250
 Mathieson, General, farewell message to Household Battalion, 182, 183-184

Maubeuge, B.E.F. at, 33, 37, 41 ;
 Germans at, 65, 67
 Maud'huy, General, 88
 Maunoury, General, 54 ; in B. of
 Marne, 55, 56, 59, 60
 Maxse, General Sir Ivor, 64
 Meach, Corporal of Horse, 103
 Menier, M., 53
 Menin, 74, 91, 93 ; controversy
 regarding, 87 and *n.*
 Merville, 201
 Messines, ix, 70, 74, 104, explosion
 at, 185
 Meyrick, George, 115, 167 *n.*
 Miller, Lieut. J., 160
 Milner, Viscount, 211
 Monchy, 164 *et seq.* ; capture of, 210
 Monckton - Arundell, Lt. - Colonel
 Hon. George, 37 *n.*
 Mons, retreat from, ix, 41 *et seq.*,
 247
 Mons Star, issue of, 115 *n.*
 Montdidier, 206, 207
 Montigny Farm, 192
 Motor transport, 203-204
 Moussy, General, 107 *et seq.*
 Moyencourt, 48
 Mundy, Captain, 144, 145

N.

NAMUR, 38
 Napier, Lord of Magdala, 25
 Naylor-Leyland, Lieut. G. V., death
 of, 67
 Neale, Captain, 80
 Nesle, 46
 Neuve Chapelle, Battle of, 121-122,
 126
 Nivelles, General, 163, 170
 Northumberland Fusiliers, 76, 77
 Noyon, 45
 Nugent, Colonel, 15

O.

OISE, River, 49
 Olissi, General, 107
 Ormonde, Duke of, 20
 Osborne, 2
 Ourcq, River, 55, 59, 62

P.

PAGNAN, 64
 Paissy, 65 *et seq.*
 Panther incident, 10

Pares, Surgeon Lieut.-Col., 30
 Pares, Surgeon Major, 102 *n.*
 Paris, German threats to, 52-53
 56, 106 ; first "leave" to, 67
 Passchendaele, 89, 94 ; "Push,"
 177 *et seq.*, 188
 Pell's *Issue Rolls*, 16
 Pemberton, Captain, 72 ; death of,
 91
 Peronne, 185
 Petit Morin, crossing of, 56, 58, 59
 Philipps, Hon. C. E. A., 120 ; death
 of, 129, 132, 133
 "Pill-boxes," German use of, 187-
 188
 Pilot, *The* (May, 1812), quoted on
 Life Guards, 17 *n.*
 Plumer, F. M. Lord, 123 *n.*
 Poelcappelle, 93, 94, 178, 179
 Poincaré, Pres. F. R., at Dunkirk
 Conference, 106
 Poison Gas, first use of by Germans,
 123 ; first used by Allies, 137
 Portal, General Bertram, in com-
 mand of Seventh Brigade, 159 *n.*,
 164
 Portal, Colonel Wyndham, in com-
 mand of Household Battalion,
 171 *et seq.*, 176, 178, 180, 182 *et seq.*
 Prémont, 44
 Preseau, 42, 43
 Prussian Guards, attack of, 112, 114

Q.

QUEEN'S Regiment, 65
 Querrieu, 159, 190, 191

R.

RAWLINSON, Sir Henry (Lord
 Rawlinson), measures for the
 relief of Antwerp, 84 *et seq.* ; in
 the Menin-Ypres area, 85 *et seq.* ;
 on Menin, 87 *n.* ; at Zandvoorde,
 94, 95 ; on the Somme, 156
 Regent's Park, Household Cavalry
 in, 31
 Requette Farm, attack on, 178
et seq.
 Revillon, 64
 Rheims, German attack on, 206
 Roberts, F. M. Earl, 1 *n.*
 Rœux, attack on, 173 *et seq.*
 Roll of Honour of Officers and Men
 of Household Cavalry, European
 War 1914-1918...vii, 221-246

- Roodevode, 87
 Roulers, 88, 90, 91
 Rouy, 48
 Roxburghe, Duke of, 92
 Royal Horse Guards (the Blues),
 George V. in uniform of, vii;
 inclusion in Household Cavalry,
 17 *n.*; first title of, 19; at
 Néry, 51; spy hunt by, 67 and *n.*;
 at Ypres, 90, 92, 95; at
 Kruiseecke, 98 *et seq.*; Roll of
 Officers who embarked for France
 Oct. 6th, 1914...82*b* - 83;
 Kavanagh tribute to, 113 *n.*;
 join Eighth Brigade, 114; at
 Lynde, 120; at 2nd B. of Ypres,
 126, 127, 129-133, and losses of,
 129; at Hill 70...139-140; at
 B. of Arras, 164 *et seq.*; join
 First Army at Front, 203; visit
 of King George V. to, 208;
 success in last days of the War,
 217, Roll of Honour, 233-239;
 Officers who served in the War,
 259-261
 Royal Palaces, privileges of House-
 hold Cavalry in, 14 *et seq.*
 Rumbek, 87
 Ruprecht, Prince, 101, 106
 Russell's Foot Guards, 19
- S.
- St. Eloi, 87, 105
 St. Omer, 70, 86
 St. Quentin, 45, 214 *et seq.*
 Salvigny, 45
 Sarajevo, Murders, 28
 Satellites, term applied to Life
 Guards, 16
 Saultain, 42
 Scarpe, River, 176-177, 184
 Sebourg, 42
 Seymour, Colonel, 167
 Shabracque, new, description of,
 8 *n.*
 Shrapnel helmet, reception of, 154-
 155
 Silver Stick-in-Waiting, duties of,
 3, 5, 13, 17, 18, 20; letter to
 King's private secretary from,
 on privileges of Household
 Cavalry, 15
 Smith-Dorrien, General, 44 *et seq.*,
 123 *n.*
 Smith, Lieut. Murray, 42; death
 of, 72; diary quoted, 129-133
- Snow, General, 44 *et seq.*
 Soissons, 62
 Solesmes, 43, 44
 Somers, Lord, 143, 144, 193
 Somme, River, 47; Battle of,
 155 *et seq.*
 Sordet, General, 44 *et seq.*
 Stanley, Colonel Hon. A. G., 155,
 215
 Sullivan, Sir Arthur, music of, in
 the Household Regiments, 250
 Sutton, Sir R., diary of, quoted,
 93 *n.*
- T.
- TANKS, first use of, 158
 Teck, Duke of (Marquess of Cam-
 bridge), 79, 89, 92
 Teck, Prince Alexander of (Earl of
 Athlone), 96
 Thulin, 42
Times, The, cited on William IV.'s
 funeral, 23; quoted on Review of
 Household Cavalry, 26; quoted
 on fighting at Klein Zillebeke,
 117-118; Recruiting supplement
 issued by, 146 *et seq.*
 Torrie, Major, Dawnay's successor,
 111
 Trench Warfare, beginning of, 62,
 67
 Trenches, 100, 112, 121
 "Trooper," designation of, ordained,
 9-10
 Tweeddale, Marquis of, 97
 Tweedmouth, Lord, 110, 111, 167;
 letter to Col. Fitzgerald on 2nd
 B. of Ypres, quoted, 133
- V.
- VANDELEUR'S Squadron, annihila-
 tion of, 102
 Vaughan, Colonel, 47
 Vauxiere, 64, 66
 Vendhulie, 46
 Verdun, Nivelle's attack on, 170
 Vereeniging, Peace of, 9
 Verloren Hoek, 112, 113
 Vermelles, 138, 139
 Vesle, River, 62, 63
 Victoria, Queen, 6, 13; court of,
 2-3; affection for Germany, 2 *n.*;
 Jubilee of, 18-19; farewell
 address to Household Cavalry on
 departure for South Africa, 20;
 funeral, 24; Household Cavalry
 reviewed by, 26

Victory March, 254
 Viesly, 43
 Villiers, Colonel, 255
 Vimy Ridge, 163, 164, 169, 170
 Vlamertinghe, 123, 128, 129, 134-135
 Vyse, Colonel Howard, 32

W.

WALES, Prince of, in the Guards' March, 253
 Wallace, Major Euan, 42, 44, 61, 72, 73 n.
 Wellington, Duke of, 80 n.
 Wentworth's Foot Guards, 19
 Westminster Abbey, coronation of Edward VII. at, 1
 Westminster, Dean of, address of, at Household Cavalry Requiem, 250-251
 Weston, General Hunter, 43, 63
 William II., German Emperor, 104, 112; ambition of, 2 n.; at Agadir, 10; at funeral of Edward VII., 13-14; near Ypres, 74, 116-117; at Zandvoorde, 101, 102
 William III., death of, 20
 William IV., funeral of, 16, 18, 23
 Wilson, Colonel Gordon, 79; death of, 109, 118, and Sir J. French's message, 109-110

Windsor Castle, 2
 Wolseley, Viscount, 2 n., 4 n.
 Wood, F. M., Sir Evelyn, 4 n., 26, 151 n.; letter from, on dismounting Royal Horse Guards, 197
 Worcesters, the gallantry of, at Gheluvelt, 104, 117, 118
 Worsley, Lord, death and burial of, 102, 103
 Wyndham, Captain E. H., quoted on trenches, 121
 Wyndham, Lieut. Hon. Everard, 32
 Wytschaette, Battle of, ix, 74, 77, 246, 247

Y.

YEOMANRY, arrival in France, 113
 Yeomen of the Guard, foundation and functions, 16, 22
 Ypres, ix, 88, 185; B.E.F. at, 70 *et seq.*; First Battle of, 70, 84, 86, 247; Oct. 31st, a fateful day for, 104, 106-107; end of battle, 114; Second Battle of, 117, 123 *et seq.*
 Yzeux, 158

Z.

ZANDVOORDE, 97, 99, 103, 105; unveiling of Household Cavalry Memorial at, May, 1924...246-249
 Zwarteele, 108-109, 246, 248

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN



3 9015 07666 8279

